As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol NOTICE. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols ⚠⚠📖 on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

⚠⚠ is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

➔ **Safety Labels** P. 81

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol ⚠ and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

⚠DANGER	You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠WARNING	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠⚠WARNING	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠CAUTION	You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

The images throughout this owner's manual (including the front cover) that depict features, equipment, and Meter screens are only examples and may not be representative of your particular model.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the right-hand drive models.

Safe Driving P. 31

For Safe Driving P. 32 Seat Belts P. 36 Airbags P. 47

Instrument Panel P. 83

Indicators P. 84 Gauges and Displays P. 100

Controls P. 141

Clock P. 142 Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 145
Windows P. 161
Seats P. 184 Interior Convenience Items P. 196

Features P. 215

Driving P. 217

Before Driving P. 218 Towing a Trailer P. 221
Parking Your Vehicle P. 309 Refueling P. 313

Maintenance P. 317

Before Performing Maintenance P. 318 Oil Monitor System* P. 321
Replacing Light Bulbs P. 348
Battery P. 365 Remote Transmitter Care P. 368
Cleaning P. 372 Accessories and Modifications P. 378

Handling the Unexpected P. 381

Tools P. 382 If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 383
Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 402 Overheating P. 403
If You Cannot Open the Tailgate P. 425

Information P. 427

Specifications P. 428 Identification Numbers P. 431

Contents

Child Safety P. 57
Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 80
Safety Labels P. 81

Tailgate P. 157
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 163
Cooling System* P. 206
Security System P. 159
Mirrors P. 181
Climate Control System* P. 209

When Driving P. 222
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions P. 315
Honda SENSING P. 243
Turbo Engine Vehicle* P. 316
Braking P. 304

Maintenance Schedule P. 326
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 354
Cooling System*/Climate Control System* Maintenance P. 370
Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 333
Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 358

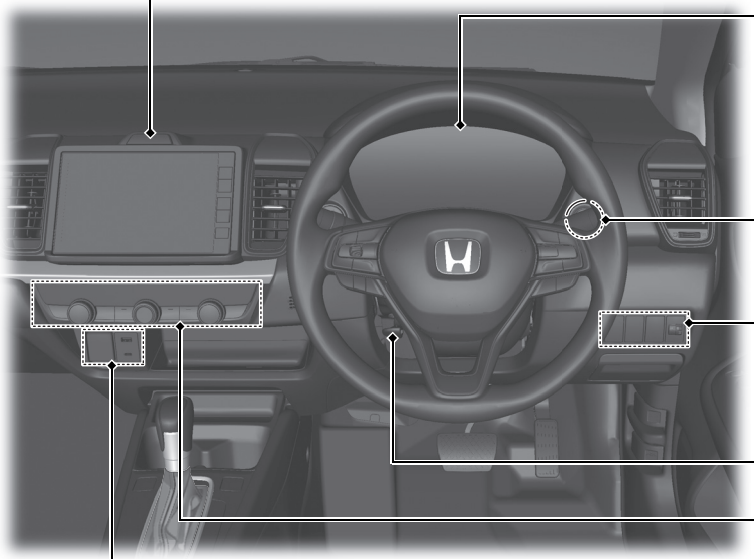
Handling of the Jack P. 393
Indicator Coming On/Blinking P. 407
Engine Does Not Start P. 394
Fuses P. 410
If the Battery Is Dead P. 398
Emergency Towing P. 424

Devices that Emit Radio Waves* P. 432
Open Source Licence P. 434

Quick Reference Guide P. 4
Safe Driving P. 31
Instrument Panel P. 83
Controls P. 141
Features P. 215
Driving P. 217
Maintenance P. 317
Handling the Unexpected P. 381
Information P. 427
Index P. 435

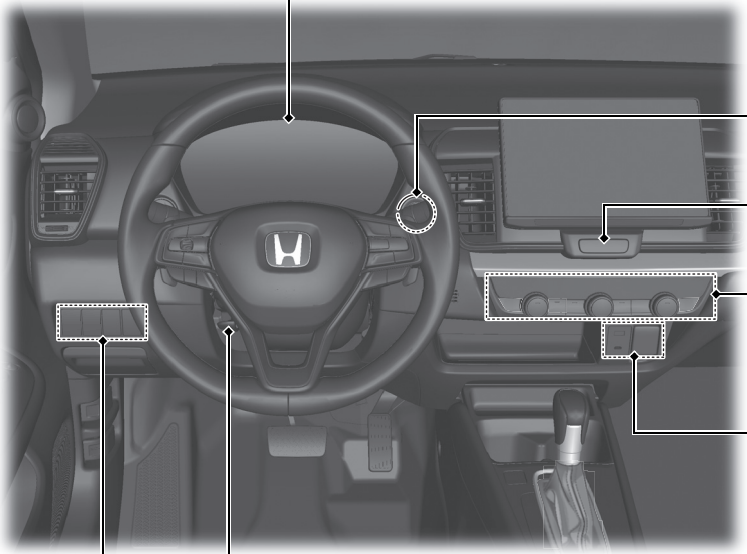
Visual Index

Right-hand Drive Type



- Hazard Warning Button
- Clock P. 142
- System Indicators P. 84
- Gauges P. 100
- Driver Information Interface P. 102, 123
- ENGINE START/STOP Button P. 163
- (Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button P. 241
- Headlight Adjuster* P. 170
- Steering Wheel Adjustments P. 180
- Cooling System* P. 206
- Climate Control System* P. 209
- Rear Demister Button P. 179
- Accessory Power Socket P. 204
- USB Port* P. 205

Left-hand Drive Type

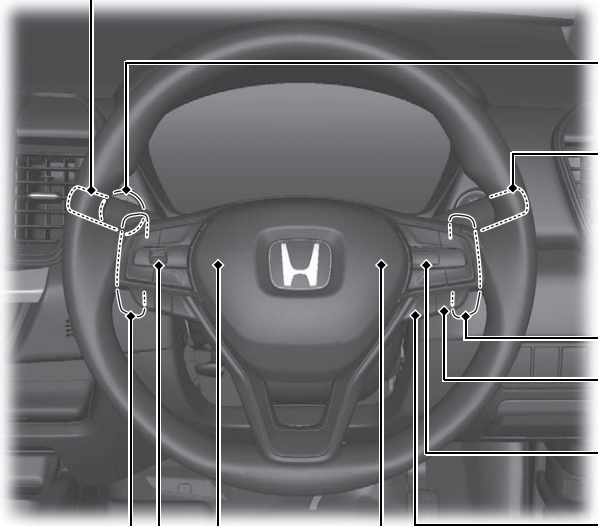


- Clock P. 142
- System Indicators P. 84
- Gauges P. 100
- Driver Information Interface P. 102
- ENGINE START/STOP Button P. 163
- Hazard Warning Button
- Climate Control System P. 209
- Rear Demister Button P. 179
- Accessory Power Socket P. 204
- USB Port P. 205
- Steering Wheel Adjustments P. 180
- (Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button P. 241

* Not available on all models

Visual Index

All models



Left-hand drive models

- Headlights/Turn Signals P. 166, 167
- LaneWatch Button*, *1

Right-hand drive models

- Wipers/Washers P. 175
- CAMERA Button*, *1

- Brightness Control P. 178

Right-hand drive models

- Headlights/Turn Signals P. 166, 167
- LaneWatch Button*, *1

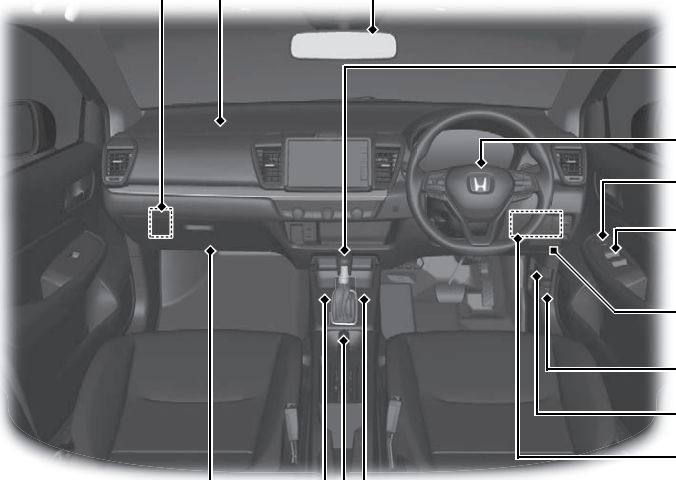
Left-hand drive models

- Wipers/Washers P. 175

- Paddle Shifter* (Shift Up) P. 234
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button P. 284
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Button P. 267
- Interval Button P. 280
- Horn (Press an area around)
- Left Selector Wheel P. 102, 123
- Paddle Shifter* (Shift Down) P. 234

*1: Details are listed in a separate manual.

Right-hand Drive Type

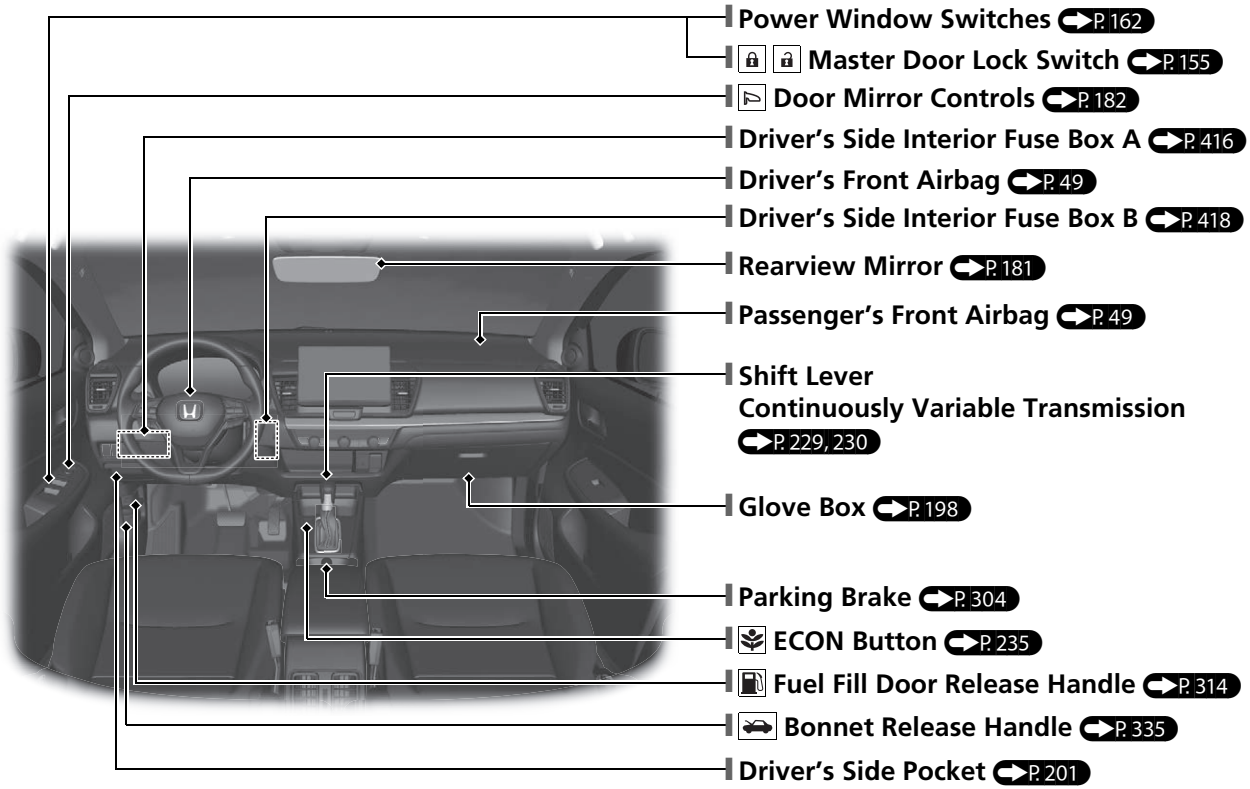


- Passenger's Side Interior Fuse Box A and B* P. 420, 422
- Passenger's Front Airbag P. 49
- Rearview Mirror P. 181
- Shift Lever
  Continuously Variable Transmission P. 229, 230
- Driver's Front Airbag P. 49
- Door Mirror Controls P. 182
- Power Window Switches P. 162
- Master Door Lock Switch P. 155
- Driver's Side Pocket P. 201
- Bonnet Release Handle P. 335
- Fuel Fill Door Release Handle P. 314
- Driver's Side Interior Fuse Box A P. 416
- ECON Button P. 235
- Parking Brake P. 304
- Auto Idle Stop OFF Button* P. 237
- Glove Box P. 198

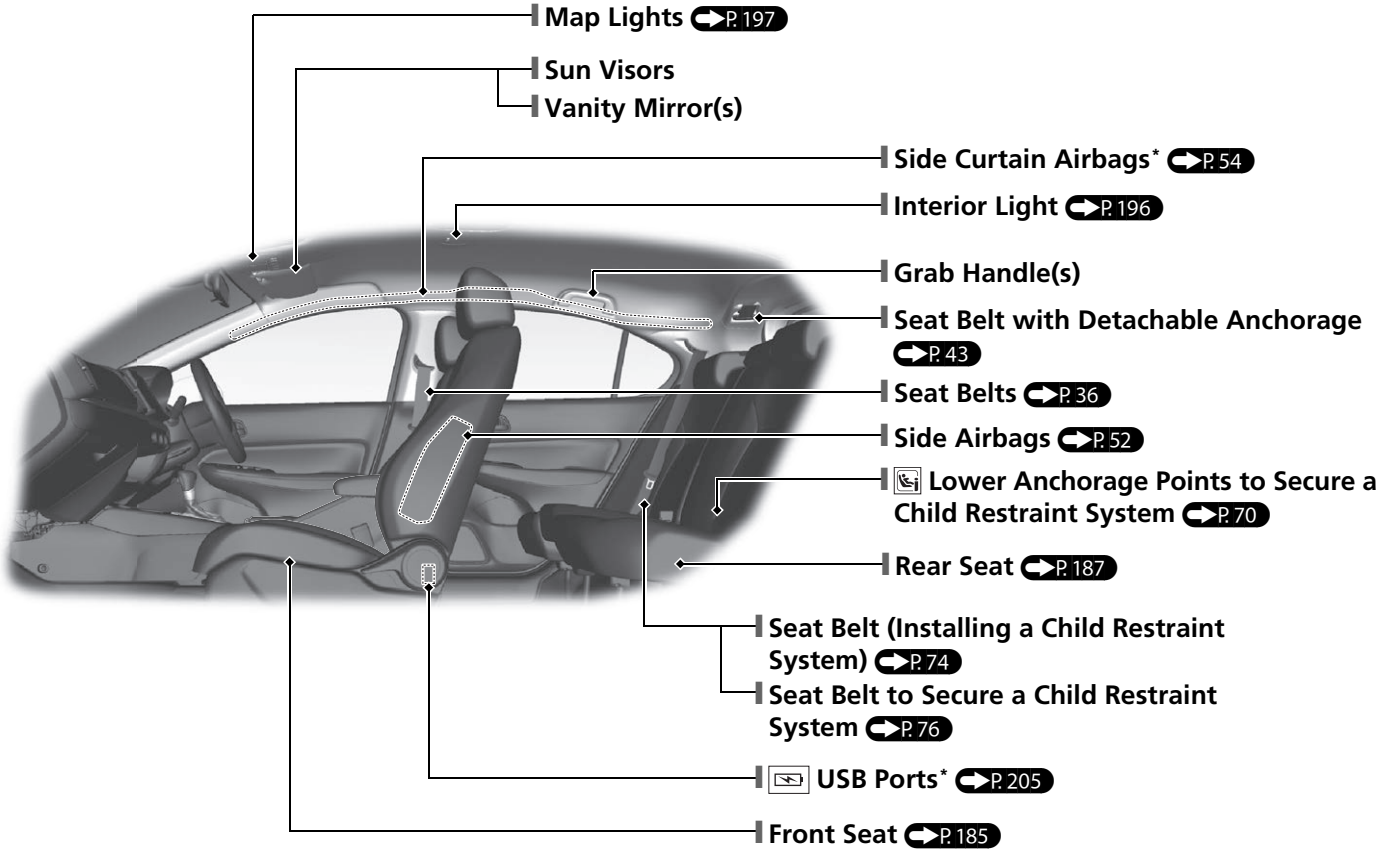
* Not available on all models

Visual Index

Left-hand Drive Type

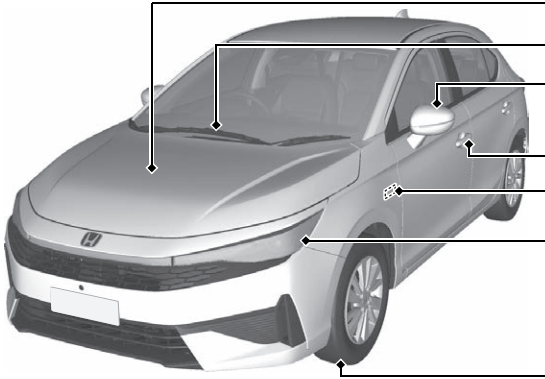


All models

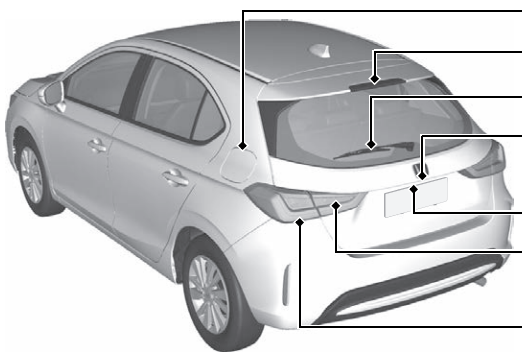


* Not available on all models

Visual Index



- Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 333
- Windscreen Wipers P. 175, 354
- Power Door Mirrors P. 182
- Side Turn Signal Lights* P. 166, 348
- Door Lock/Unlock Control P. 147
- Side Turn Signal Lights* P. 166, 348
- Headlights P. 167, 348
- Front Turn Signal Lights P. 166, 348
- Position/Daytime Running Lights P. 167, 174, 348
- Tyres P. 358, 383

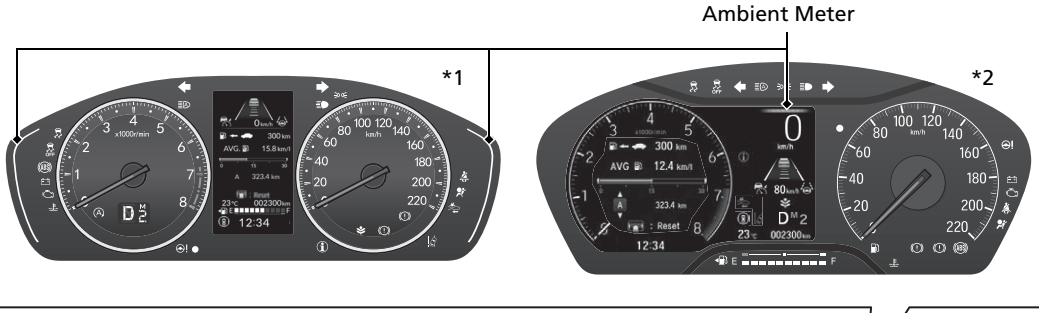


- How to Refuel P. 314
- High-Mount Brake Light P. 352
- Rear Wiper P. 177, 356
- Opening/Closing the Tailgate P. 158
- Tailgate Outer Handle P. 158
- Rear Licence Plate Light P. 352
- Back-Up Lights P. 351
- Taillights P. 351
- Rear Turn Signal Lights P. 349
- Brake Lights P. 349
- Brake/Taillights P. 349

Eco Assist System

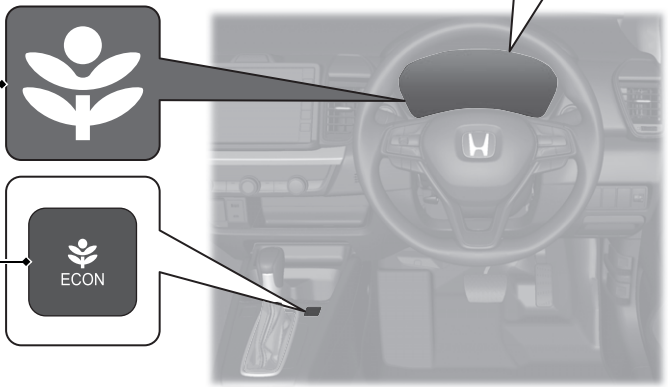
Ambient Meter*

- The colour of the ambient meter changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel-efficient manner.



ECON Mode Indicator P. 94
Comes on when the **ECON** button is pressed.

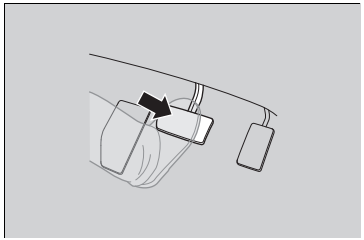
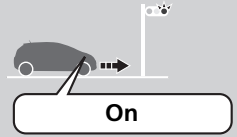
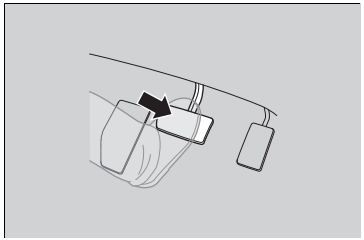
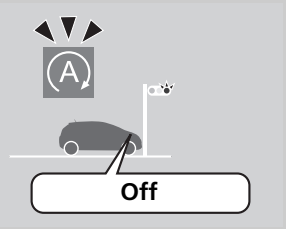
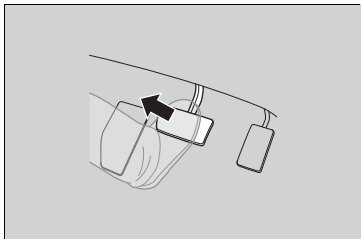
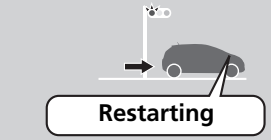
ECON Button P. 235
Helps to maximise fuel economy.



*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

Auto Idle Stop Function*

To improve fuel economy, the engine stops and then restarts as detailed below. When Auto Idle Stop is on, the Auto Idle Stop indicator (green) comes on. P. 236

At	Continuously variable transmission	Engine status
Deceleration ↓	 Stop the vehicle and depress the brake pedal.	
Stop ↓	 Keep the brake pedal depressed.	
Start-up	 Release the brake pedal.	

Safe Driving P. 31

Before Driving Checklist P. 35

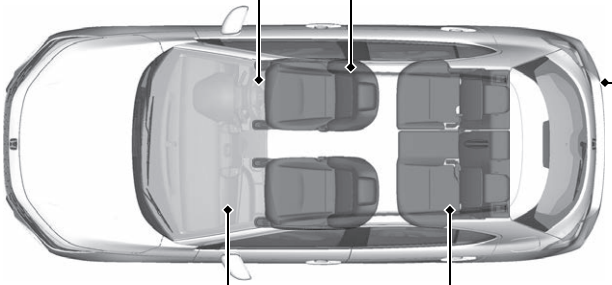
- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

Seat Belts P. 36

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.



Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.



Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 80

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Child Safety P. 57

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

Airbags P. 47

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

* Not available on all models

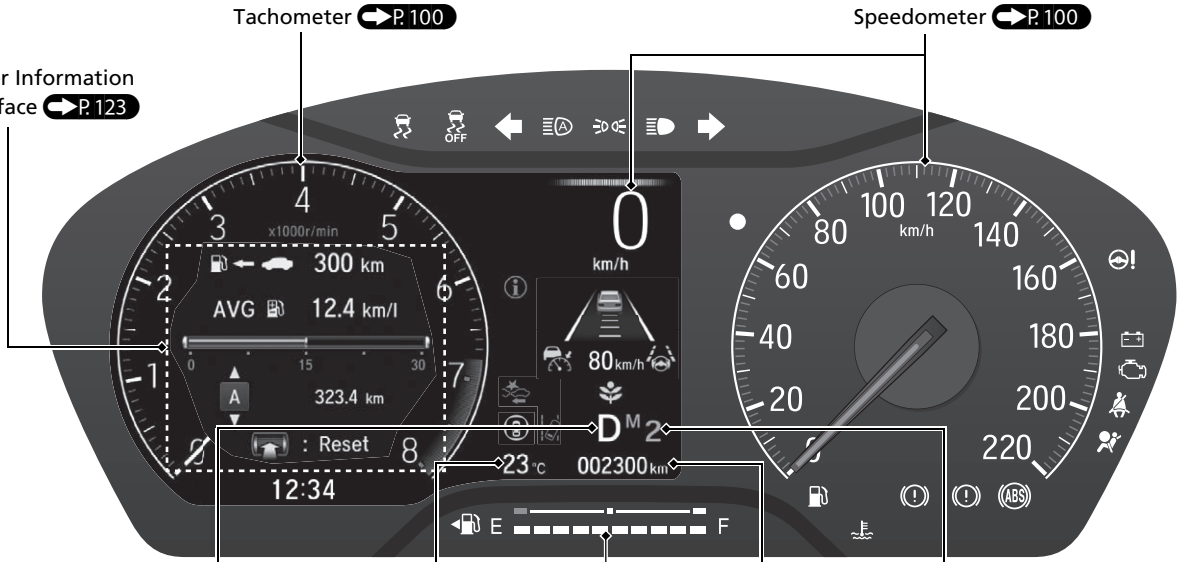
Instrument Panel P. 83

Indicators P. 84/Gauges P. 100/Driver Information Interface P. 102, 123

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter

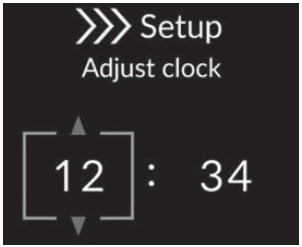


* Not available on all models

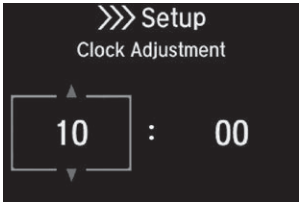
Controls P. 141

Clock P. 142

Models with A-type meter

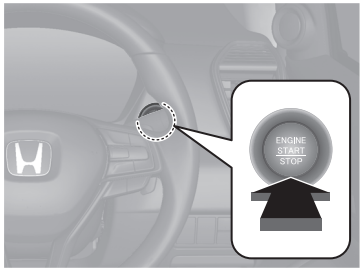


Models with B-type meter



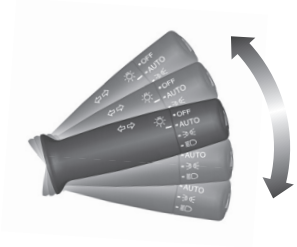
ENGINE START/STOP Button P. 163

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



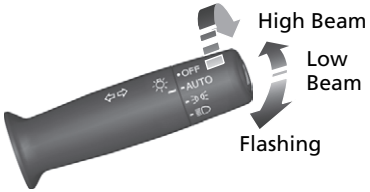
Turn Signals P. 166

Turn Signal Control Lever



Lights P. 167

Light Control Switches

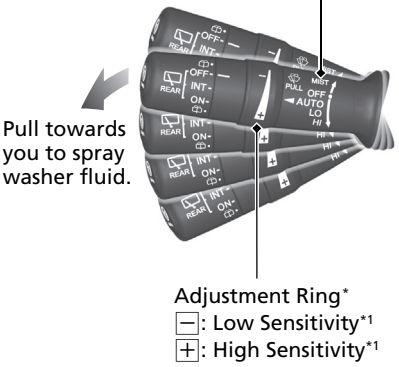


Wipers and Washers

P. 175

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

MIST
OFF
AUTO[*1]: Wiper speed varies automatically
INT[*2]: Low speed with intermittent
LO: Low speed wipe
HI: High speed wipe



*1:Models with automatic intermittent wipers
*2:Models without automatic intermittent wipers

Models with automatic intermittent wipers

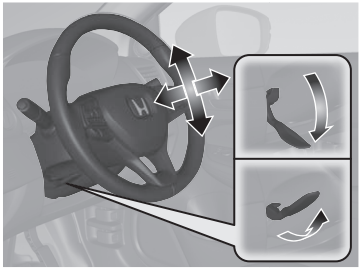
AUTO should always be turned OFF before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Steering Wheel

P. 180

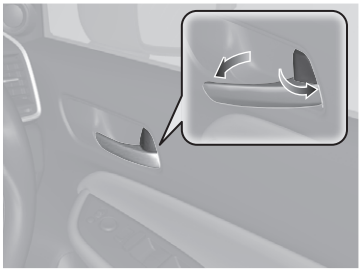
- To adjust, push the adjustment lever down, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



Unlocking the Driver's Door from the Inside

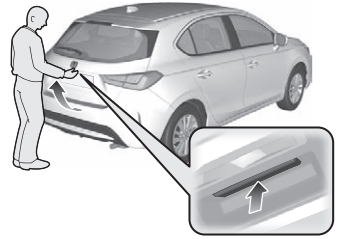
P. 154

- Pull the driver's door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



* Not available on all models

Tailgate P. 157



Models without keyless access system

- With all the doors unlocked, press the tailgate outer handle and lift open the tailgate.

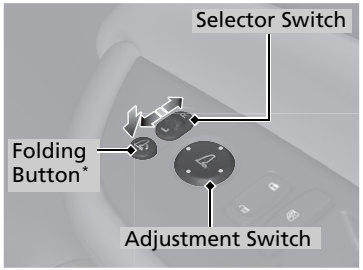
Models with keyless access system

- Press the tailgate outer handle to unlock and open the tailgate when you carry the keyless remote.

Power Door Mirrors

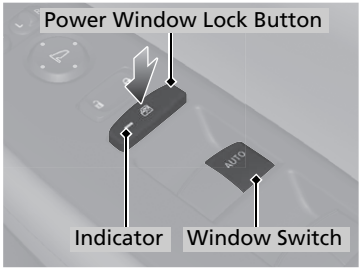
P. 182

- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to **L** or **R**.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button* to fold in and out the door mirrors.



Power Windows P. 161

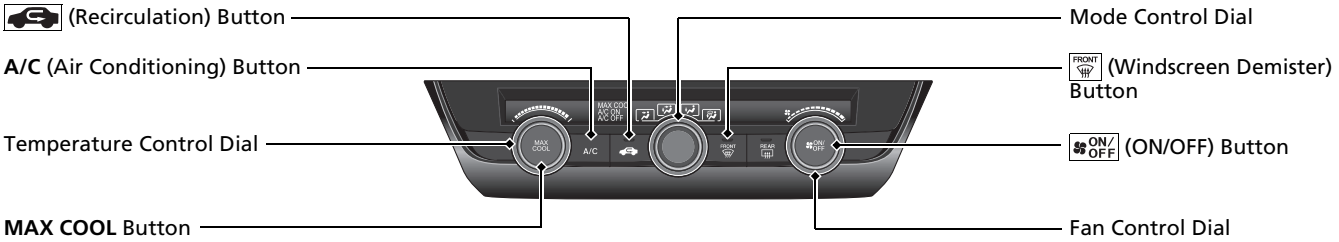
- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the ON position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.



Cooling System* P. 206

- Press the ON/OFF button to turn the system on or off.
- Rotate the fan control dial to adjust the fan speed.
- Turn the mode control dial to / / / to select the vents air flows from.
- Rotate the temperature control dial to adjust the temperature.
- Press the FRONT button to defrost the windscreen.

Air flows from dashboard vents.	Air flows from floor vents.
Air flows from floor and dashboard vents.	Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.



* Not available on all models

Climate Control System* P. 209

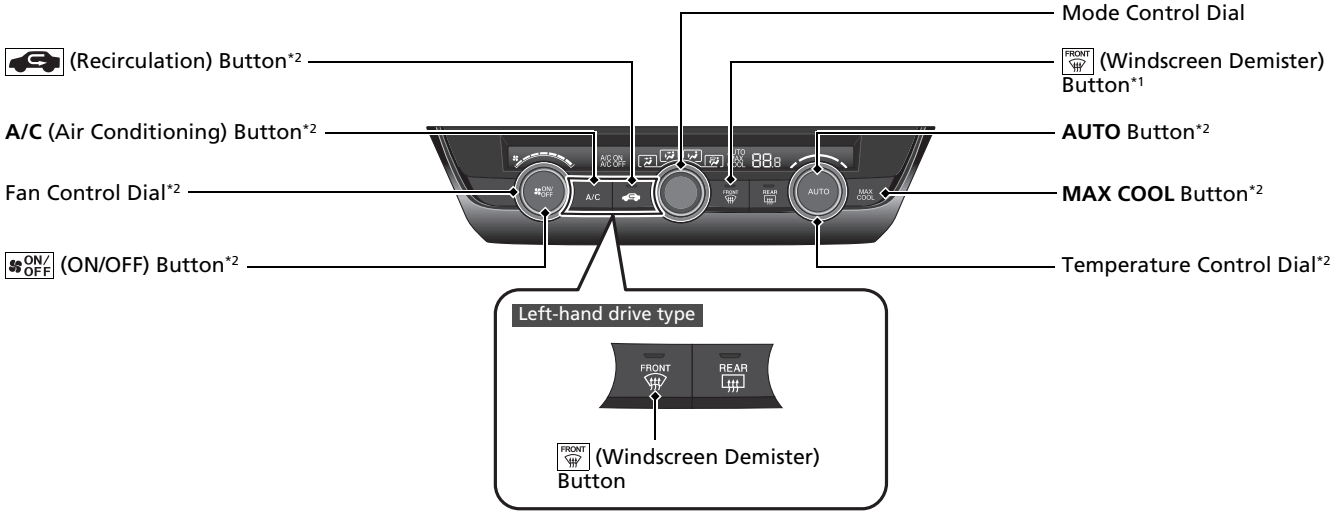
- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the ON/OFF button to turn the system on and off.
- Press the FRONT button to defrost the windscreen.

Air flows from dashboard vents and back of the console compartment*.

Air flows from floor and dashboard vents, and back of the console compartment*.

Air flows from floor vents.

Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.



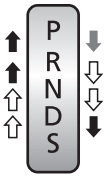
*1:Right-hand drive type
*2:Right-hand drive models shown. For the left-hand drive models, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive model.

Driving P. 217

Continuously Variable Transmission P. 229, 230

● Shift to P and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.

Shifting

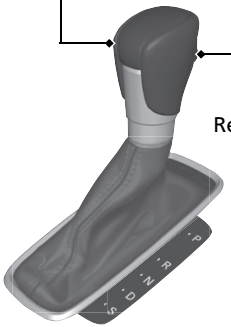


Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.

Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.

Press the shift lever release button and shift.

Shift Lever



P **Park**
Used when parking or starting the engine.

R **Reverse**
Used when reversing.

N **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.

D **Drive**
Used:
- For normal driving

Models with paddle shifters
- When temporarily driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode

S **Drive (S)**
Used:
- For better acceleration
- To increase engine braking
- When going up or down hills

Models with paddle shifters
- When driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode* P. 233

- Allows you to manually shift the transmission up or down without removing your hands from the steering wheel.

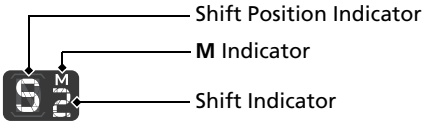
When the shift position is in S

- Pulling a paddle shifter changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode.
- The **M** indicator and the selected speed number are displayed in the shift indicator.

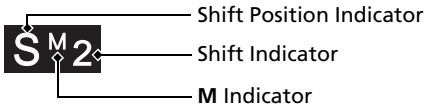
When the shift position is in D

- Pulling a paddle shifter temporarily changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode. The selected speed number is displayed in the shift indicator.

Models with A-type meter

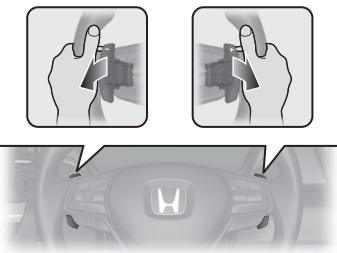


Models with B-type meter



Shift Down − Paddle Shifter

Shift Up + Paddle Shifter



CMBS On and Off P. 250

- When a possible frontal collision is likely unavoidable, the Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, use the safety support of the driver information interface.

VSA On and Off P. 241

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

Refueling P. 313

Fuel recommendation:

Thai models

Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher

Except Thai models

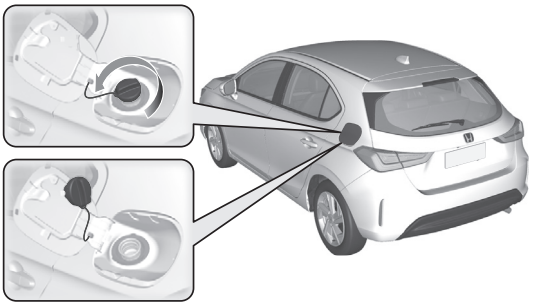
Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Fuel tank capacity: 40 L

1. Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the dashboard at the driver's side.



2. Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.
3. Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
4. After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



* Not available on all models

Honda SENSING P. 243

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help to avoid or reduce the severity of collisions.

Honda SENSING has the following functions.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

P. 246

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Road Departure Mitigation System P. 259

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) P. 267

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 284

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

Lead Car Departure Notification System

P. 296

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.

Auto High-Beam P. 171

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

Parking Sensor System*

P. 311

The centre sensors monitor obstacles behind your vehicle, and the beeper and driver information interface lets you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

Maintenance P. 317

Under the Bonnet P. 333

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

1. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.



2. Locate the bonnet latch lever, pull it up, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



3. When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades P. 354

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen or become noisy.



Tyres P. 358

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

Lights P. 348

- Inspect all lights regularly.

* Not available on all models

Handling the Unexpected P. 381

Flat Tyre P. 383

- Park in a safe location and repair the flat tyre using the tyre repair kit in the luggage area.



Engine Won't Start P. 394

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



Overheating P. 403

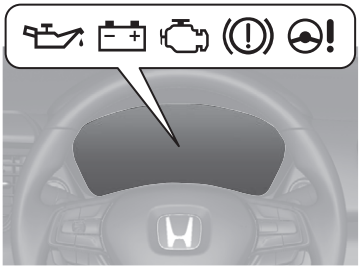
- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the engine cool down.



Indicators Come On

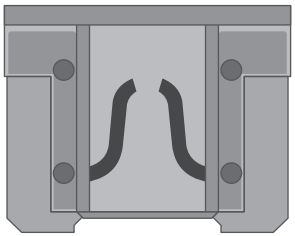
P. 407

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



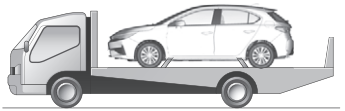
Blown Fuse P. 410

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Emergency Towing P. 424

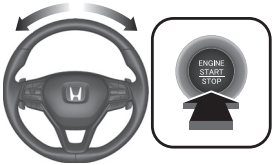
- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



What to Do If

Q **The power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to ACCESSORY. Why?**

A
- The steering wheel may be locked.
- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.



Q **The power mode does not change from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Why?**

A The shift lever should be moved to P.



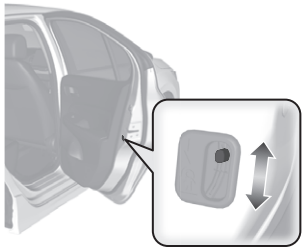
Q **Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?**

A This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

►Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 306

Q **The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?**

A Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle.
To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.



Q **Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?**

A If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors or tailgate is relocked automatically for security.

Q **Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?**

A The beeper sounds when:
- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

Models with Auto Idle Stop
- The Auto Idle Stop is in operation.

Q **Why does a beeper sound when I walk away from the vehicle after I close the door?**

A The beeper sounds if you move outside the walk away auto lock operating range before the door completely closes.
Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock) P. 149

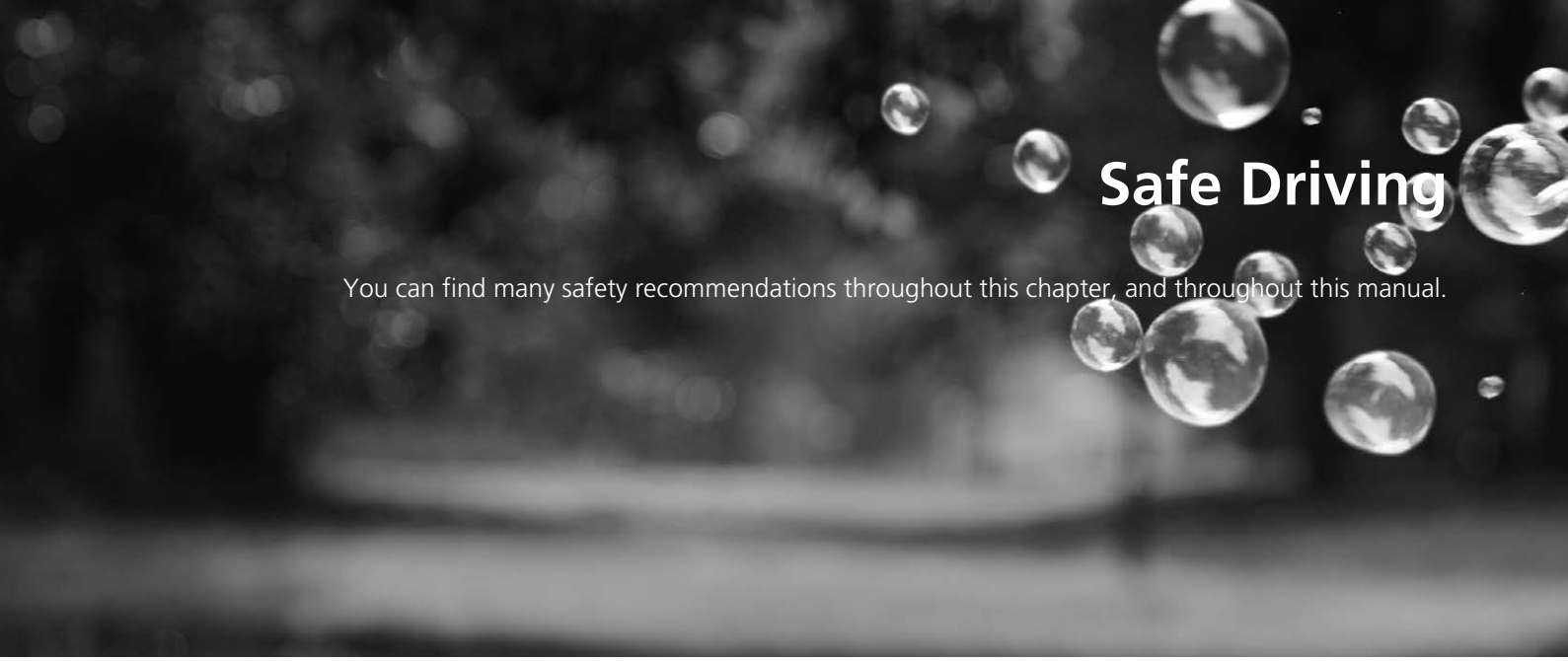
Q **Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?**

A The beeper sounds when:
- The driver, front passenger, and/or rear passenger* are not wearing their seat belts.
- The parking brake lever is not fully released.

Q **Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?**

A The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

* Not available on all models



Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving
- Important Safety Precautions 32
- Your Vehicle's Safety Features 34
- Safety Checklist 35

Seat Belts
- About Your Seat Belts 36
- Fastening a Seat Belt 41
- Seat Belt Inspection 45
- Anchorage Points 46

Airbags
- Airbag System Components 47
- Types of Airbags 49
- Front Airbags (SRS) 49
- Side Airbags 52
- Side Curtain Airbags* 54
- Airbag System Indicators 55
- Airbag Care 56

Child Safety
- Protecting Child Passengers 57
- Safety of Infants and Small Children 61
- Safety of Larger Children 77

Exhaust Gas Hazard
- Carbon Monoxide Gas 80

Safety Labels
- Label Locations 81

* Not available on all models

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

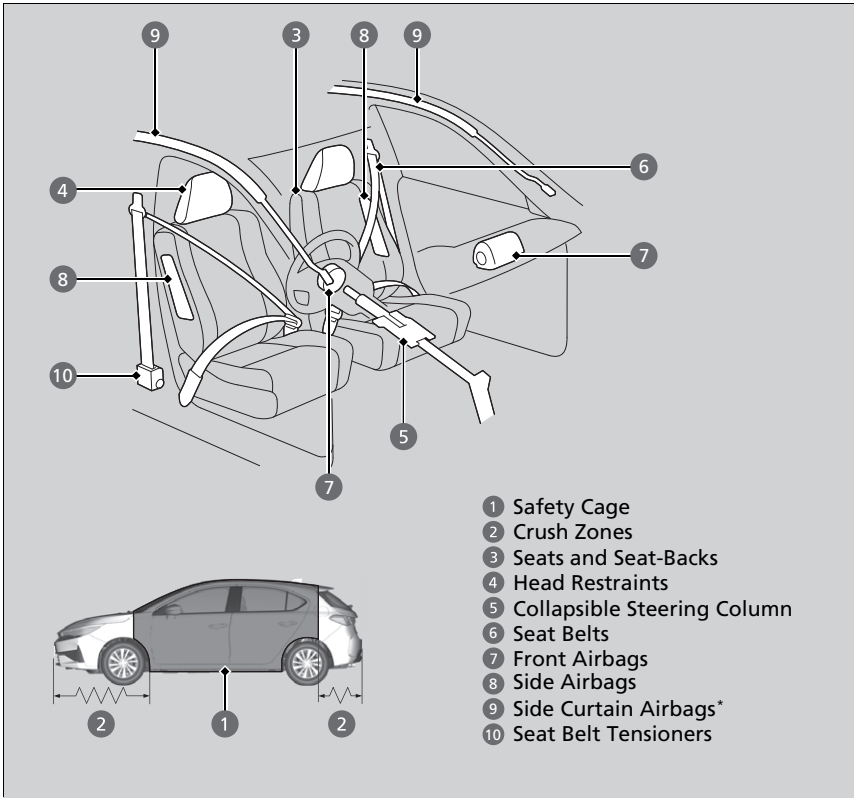
■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous.
To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets, and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

* Not available on all models

Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

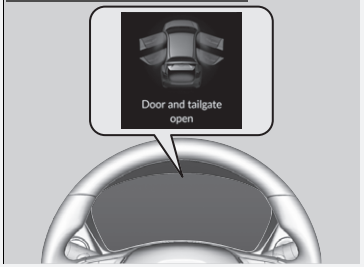
- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  ➡ **Seats** P. 184
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions** P. 192
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  ➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 41
- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height, and weight.
  ➡ **Child Safety** P. 57

Safety Checklist

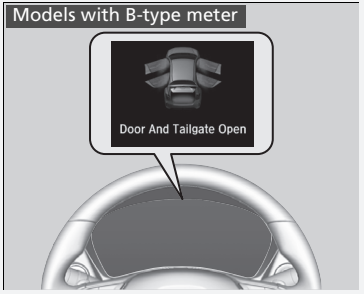
If the door and/or tailgate open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the message disappears.

➡ **Driver Information Interface (A-type meter)** P. 102
➡ **Driver Information Interface (B-type Meter)** P. 123

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

About Your Seat Belts

⚠WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

WARNING: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

WARNING: Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

WARNING: Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

➡ **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 74

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

About Your Seat Belts

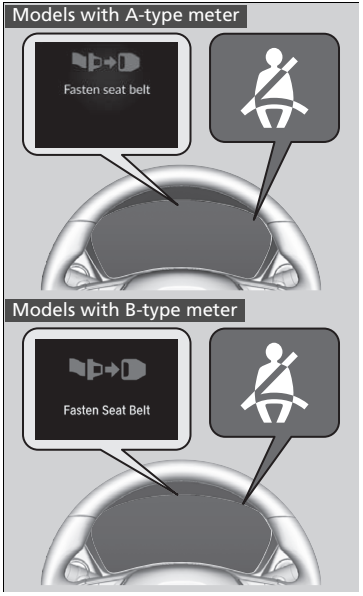
If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

Continued

■ Seat Belt Reminder



■ Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.

If you set the power mode to ON before the driver's seat belt is fastened, the indicator will come on. If the driver does not fasten the belt, the indicator will remain on.

When the vehicle is moving, the beeper will sound and the indicator will blink for a while until the seat belt is fastened.

Then, the beeper will stop and the indicator will stay on.

Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

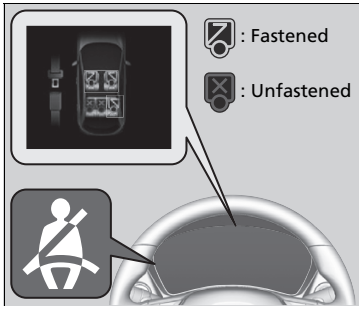
If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor. Check if:

- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



■ **Rear seats***

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. The driver information interface notifies you about the status of the rear seat belts use.

The display appears when:

- Any of the rear passenger seat belts are unfastened when the power mode is set to ON.
- A rear door is opened and then closed.
- Any of the rear passengers fasten or unfasten their seat belt.

The seat belt reminder indicator blinks and the beeper sounds if any rear passenger seat belts have been unfastened while driving.

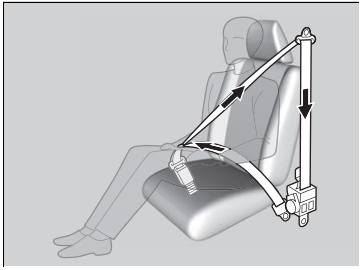
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

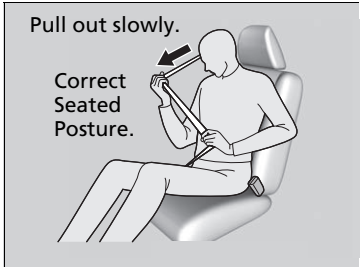
Models with side curtain airbags

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioners on both sides of the vehicle also activate.

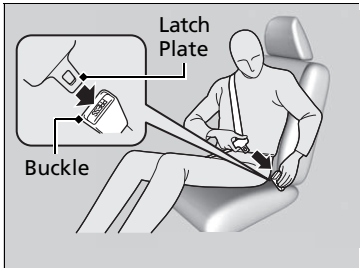
Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

Seats P. 184



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

Fastening a Seat Belt

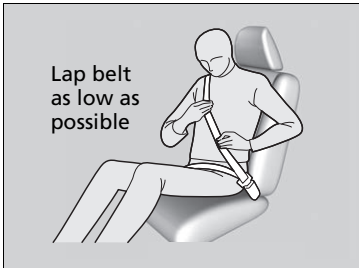
No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.
Then, smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten.
If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

About Your Seat Belts P. 36
Seat Belt Inspection P. 45

Continued



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

Fastening a Seat Belt

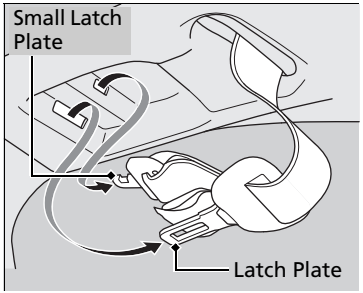
⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

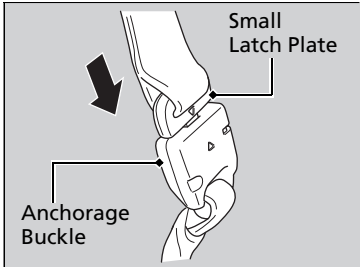
Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.
When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

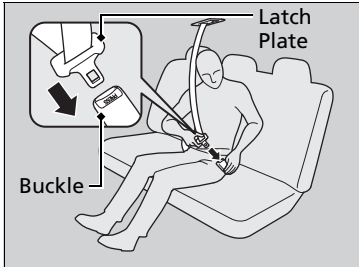
■ Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage



1. Pull out the seat belt's small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.



2. Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchorage buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. Attach the belt to the anchorage buckle.



3. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Properly fasten the seat belt the same way you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

Continued

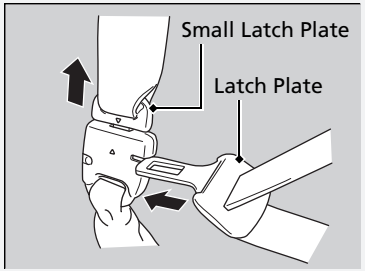
Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage

⚠WARNING

Using the seat belt with the detachable anchorage unfastened increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

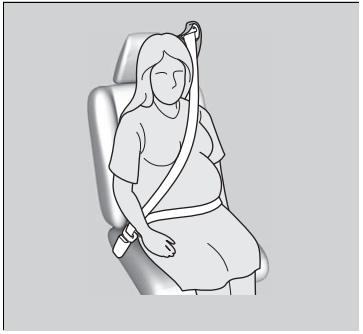
Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchorage is correctly latched.

To unlatch the detachable anchorage, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchorage buckle.



■ Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt. When positioning the seat belt, wear the shoulder belt section across the chest, avoiding the abdomen, and keep the lap belt portion as low as possible across the hips. (See illustration.)



Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.
A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

Seat Belt Inspection

⚠WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

WARNING: It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

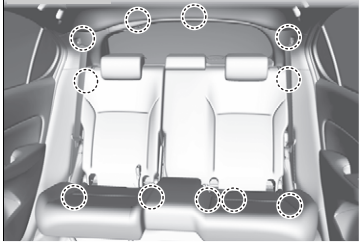
Anchorage Points

Front Seat



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.

Rear Seat



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

Airbag System Components

The front, side, and side curtain* airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

- Two side airbags. One for the driver and one for the front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Models with side curtain airbags

- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.

- An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event, the unit can record such information.

- Front seat belt tensioners.

- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.

- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:
- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags*:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

■ Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

* Not available on all models

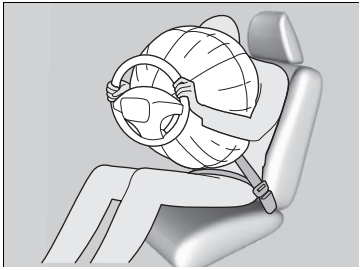
Continued

■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

■ **When front airbags should not deploy**

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags* have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts and side curtain airbags* offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ **When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage**

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ **When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe**

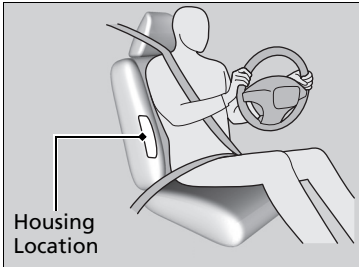
Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

* Not available on all models

Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

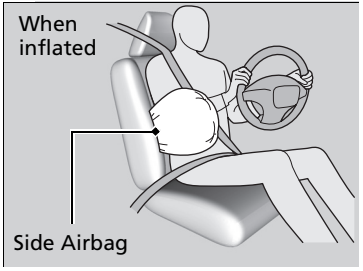
■ Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

■ Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.
Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

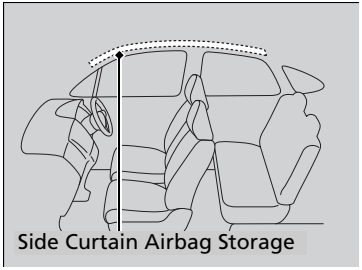
■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Curtain Airbags*

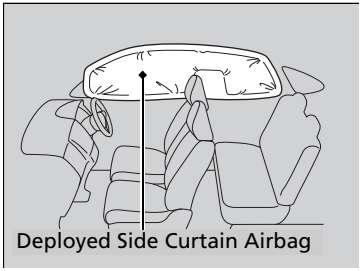
The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

■ Housing Locations


Side Curtain Airbag Storage

The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

■ Operation


Deployed Side Curtain Airbag

The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Side Curtain Airbags*

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

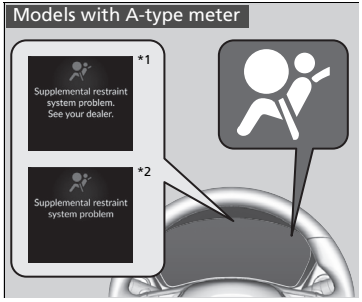
* Not available on all models

Airbag System Indicators

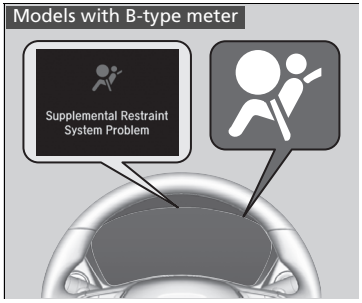
If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



■ When the power mode is set to ON

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

*1: Philippines and Laotian models
*2: Models for other countries

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

⚠WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

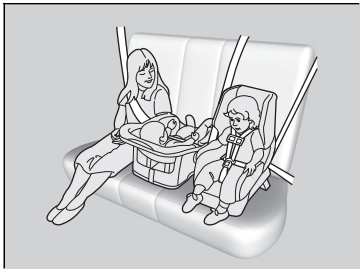
We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:



- An inflating front airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

Protecting Child Passengers

⚠WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

Selecting a Child Restraint System P. 64

Continued

- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.

Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

⚠WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows, or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

Protecting Child Passengers

Malaysian models

Front Passenger's Doorjamb

⚠WARNING



Extreme Hazard!

DO NOT use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

WARNING: Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

➡ **Opening/Closing the Power Windows** P. 161

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

Continued

Protecting Child Passengers

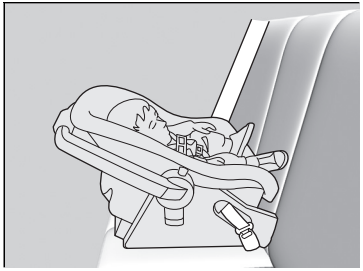
To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the passenger's side sun visor.
Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

Safety Labels P. 81

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- ▶ We recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.
  If there is, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

Protecting Infants

⚠WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

Continued

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

Protecting Infants

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

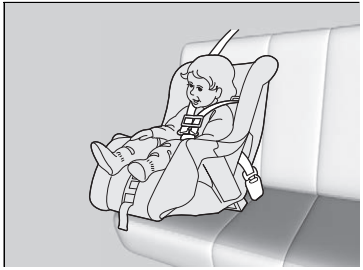
Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



■ Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

Protecting Smaller Children

⚠WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

Continued

■ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector, while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

Malaysian and Thai models

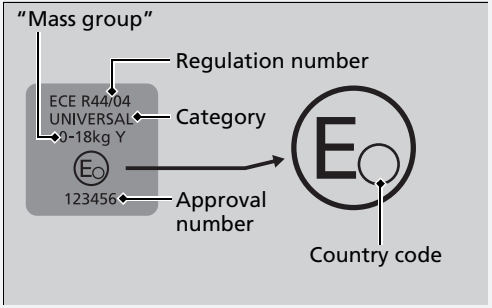
We recommend a rear-facing or a front-facing Honda genuine ISOFIX child restraint system for infants or small children, respectively. Ask your dealer.

■ Child Restraint Systems Standards

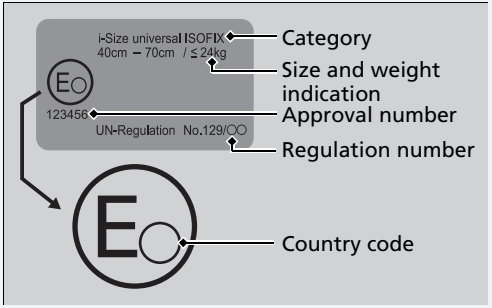
If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size/ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label



Continued

Malaysian and Thai models

■ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation



U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1: Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position and adjust the seat back to the front lock position.

*2: The head restraint must be removed when attaching a forward-reliable junior seat approved by UN R129. Store the removed head restraint in the luggage compartment so that it does not fly during sudden braking or collision.

*3: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on left side cannot be used.

*4: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt cannot be used.

*5: Attaching a seat belt mounted child restraint system to the rear right seat may make the centre seat belt unusable.

*6: If you attach a ISOFIX child restraint system to the rear right seat, the centre seat belt cannot be used.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed in seating positions where i-Size cannot be installed.

	Size groups Weight Stature		Seating position & Seat position number			
			❶	❷	❸	❹
			Front passenger[*1, *8]	2nd row		
				Left	Centre	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10 kg	No	Yes[*4]	Yes[*3]	Yes[*5, *6]
	Group 0+	Up to 13 kg				
	Group I	9-18 kg	Yes			
	Group II	15-25 kg				
	Group III	22-36 kg				
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤ 150 cm		No	Yes[*4]	No	Yes[*6]
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS[*7]	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	Yes[*4]	No	Yes[*6]
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10 kg	No	R3[*4]	No	R3[*6]
	Group 0+	Up to 13 kg				
	Group I	9-18 kg				
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18 kg	No	F3[*4]	No	F3[*6]
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤ 150 cm		B3[*2]	B3[*4]	B3[*3]	B3[*5, *6]

Continued

*1: Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position and adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
*2: The head restraint must be removed when attaching a forward-reliable junior seat approved by UN R129. Store the removed head restraint in the luggage compartment so that it does not fly during sudden braking or collision.
*3: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on left side cannot be used.
*4: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt cannot be used.
*5: Attaching a seat belt mounted child restraint system to the rear right seat may make the centre seat belt unusable.
*6: If you attach a ISOFIX child restraint system to the rear right seat, the centre seat belt cannot be used.
*7: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.
*8: Forward facing only

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed in seating positions where i-Size cannot be installed.

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

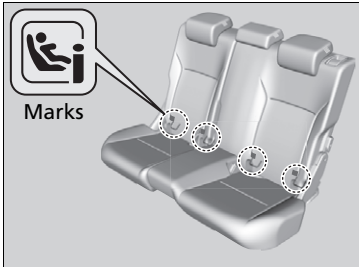
■ ASEAN Genuine CRS List

Range of application	Child Restraint System	Category
Under 100 cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX (Rearward facing)
Over 71 cm and 15 months to 100 cm	Honda Baby & Kids i-Size	i-Size Universal ISOFIX

Continued

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



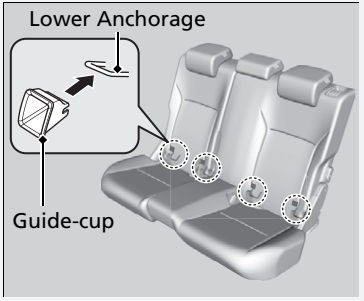
1. Locate the lower anchorages under the marks.

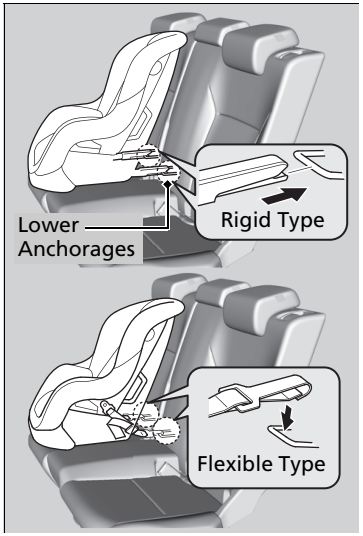
Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

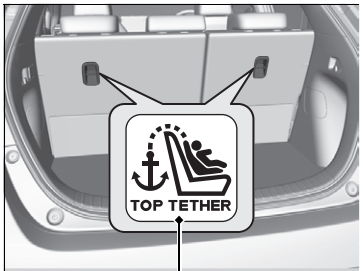
⚠WARNING

Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchorage. In a collision, one anchorage may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.







Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

2. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

▶ When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

▶ Install the child restraint system so that the gap between it and the seat-back is as small as possible.

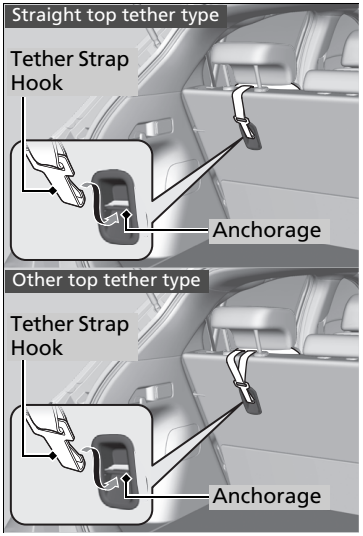
Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

WARNING: Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether Anchorage Symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle. A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

Continued



Child restraint system with tether strap

3. Pull up the head restraint and push rearward until it latches.

Models with luggage area cover

▶ Retract the luggage area cover.

➡ **Luggage Area Cover*** P. 203

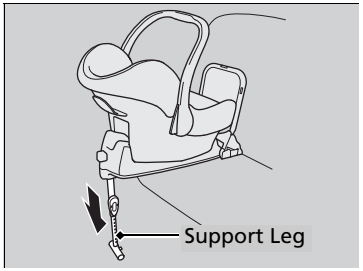
4. Route the tether strap between the head restraint legs.
Make sure the strap is not twisted.

5. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.

6. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

7. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.

 * Not available on all models



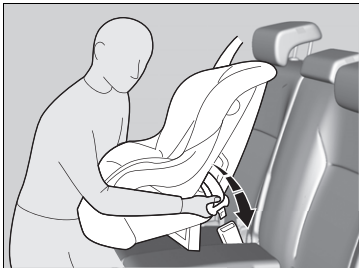
Child restraint system with support leg

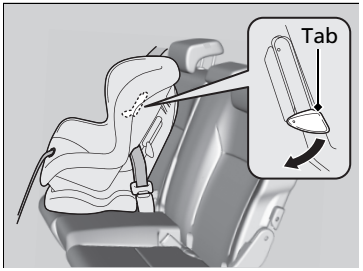
3. Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- ▶ Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support.
- ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

4. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.

Continued

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt





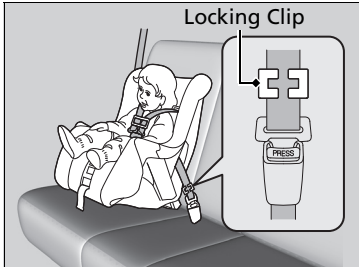
1. Raise the head restraint to its highest position.
2. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
3. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
   ▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.
4. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
5. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
   ▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
6. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
   ▶ When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.



7. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
8. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.



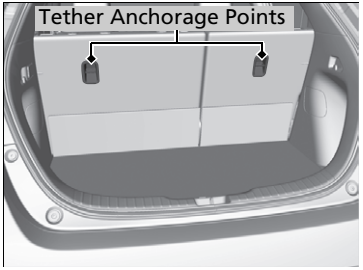
If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

After going through from the step 1 to 3, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

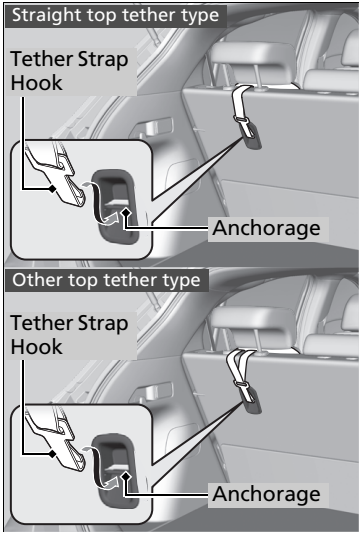
4. Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
5. Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
6. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 7 and 8.

Continued

■ Adding Security with a Tether



A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear outer seating position.
If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.



1. Pull up the head restraint and push rearward until it latches.

Models with luggage area cover

▶ Retract the luggage area cover.

➡ **Luggage Area Cover*** P. 203

2. Route the tether strap through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.

3. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.

4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Adding Security with a Tether

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint systems whether using the seat belt or lower anchorages.

* Not available on all models

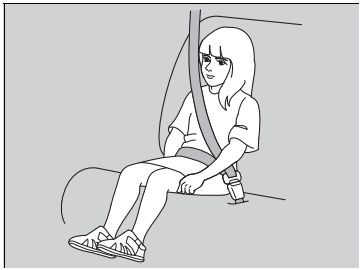
Safety of Larger Children

■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Safety of Larger Children

⚠WARNING

Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

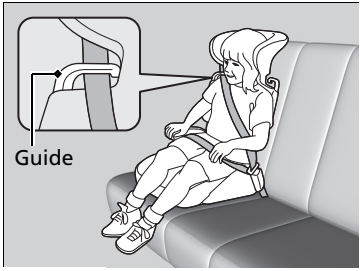
If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, and use a booster seat if needed.

Continued

Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.
There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ **Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever**
- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows and set the cooling system* or climate control system* as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the cooling system* or climate control system* in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

⚠WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

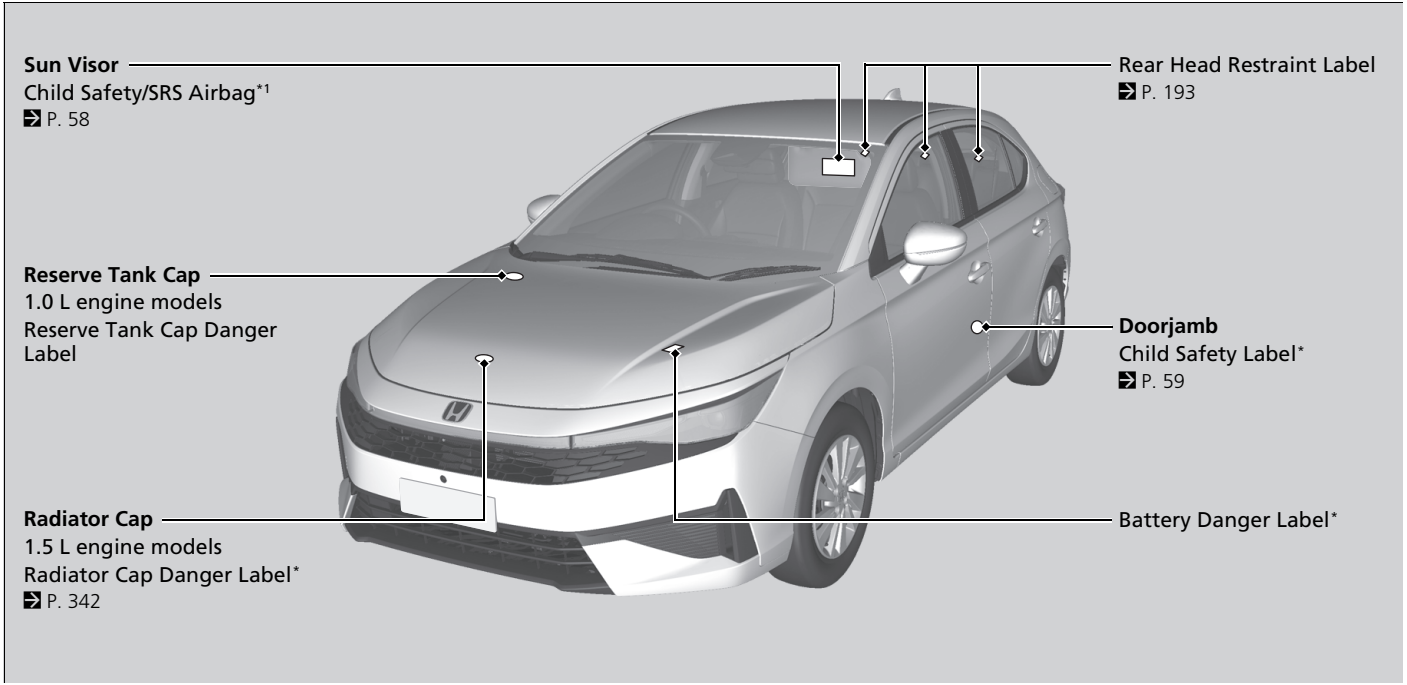
An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.
Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

* Not available on all models

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



*1:Right-hand drive models shown. For the left-hand drive models, these labels are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive model.

* Not available on all models

Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.

Indicators 84
Gauges and Displays 100
Gauges 100
Driver Information Interface (A-type meter) 102
Driver Information Interface (B-type Meter) 123

Indicators come on/blink depending on the condition of the vehicle. Messages may display on the driver information interface at the same time. Please take the appropriate action outlined in the message, such as contacting a dealer.


*1 Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) → P. 86


*1 Brake System Indicator (Amber) → P. 87


*1 Malfunction Indicator Lamp → P. 87


*1 Charging System Indicator → P. 87


*2 *3 Transmission System Indicator → P. 88


*2 *3 **M** (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator*/ Shift Indicator* → P. 88


*2 *3 Shift Position Indicator → P. 88


Seat Belt Reminder Indicator → P. 89


Low Fuel Indicator (Amber) → P. 90


*1 Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator → P. 90


*1 Supplemental Restraint System Indicator → P. 90


*1 Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator → P. 91


*1 VSA **OFF** Indicator → P. 91


*1 Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator → P. 91


Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators → P. 92


Lights On Indicator → P. 92


High-Beam Indicator → P. 92


*1 Auto High-Beam Indicator → P. 92

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the engine has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.
*2: Models with A-type meter
*3: Models with B-type meter

* Not available on all models

	ECON Mode Indicator	→ P. 94
	System Message Indicator	→ P. 94
	Low Temperature Indicator (Blue)	→ P. 90
	Immobilizer System Indicator	→ P. 93
	Security System Alarm Indicator	→ P. 93
*1	Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber)*	→ P. 94
	Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)*	→ P. 94

*1	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 95
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (White/Green)	→ P. 95
*1	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 96
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)	→ P. 96
*1	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 96
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)*	→ P. 96

*1	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 97
	Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator*	→ P. 97
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)*	→ P. 97
*1	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 98
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)	→ P. 99

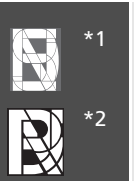
*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the engine has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
 (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.	• The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released.
		• Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.	• **Comes on while driving** - Make sure the parking brake is released. Stop in a safe place and check the brake fluid level. ➡ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving** P. 409
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.	Thai models • **Comes on along with the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber)** - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do. All models • **Comes on along with the ABS indicator** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On** P. 409

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
 (Amber)	Brake System Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.	Thai models • **Comes on while driving** - Avoid high speeds and sudden braking. Take the vehicle to a dealer immediately. Except Thai models • **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability.
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	• Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems. • Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.	➡ **If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks** P. 408
	Charging System Indicator	• Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.	• Stop in a safe place and contact a dealer immediately. ➡ **Checking the Battery** P. 365 ➡ **If the Charging System Indicator Comes On** P. 408

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
 *1 *2	Transmission System Indicator	• Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. Thai models • **Do not drive displays on the driver information interface** - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.
 *1 *2	**M** (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator*/Shift Indicator*	• Comes on when the 7-speed manual shift mode is applied.	**7-Speed Manual Shift Mode** P. 233
 *1 *2	Shift Position Indicator	• Indicates the current shift position.	**Shifting** P. 230

*1:Models with A-type meter
*2:Models with B-type meter

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	• Comes on if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON. • If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. **Malaysian models** • Comes on for a while if any rear passenger unfastens their seat belt while the power mode is ON. • Blinks and beeper sounds while driving when you or the front passenger are unfastened or any rear passenger unfastens their seat belt. **Except Malaysian models** • Blinks and beeper sounds while driving when you or the front passenger are unfastened.	**Malaysian models** • The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the passengers fasten their seat belts. • **Stays on after you and/or the passengers have fastened the seat belt(s)** - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 38 **Except Malaysian models** • The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger fasten their seat belts. • **Stays on after you and/or the front passenger has fastened the seat belt(s)** - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 38

Continued

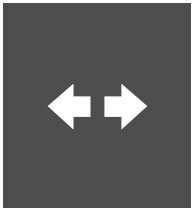
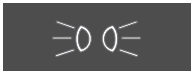
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Low Fuel Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 5.3 Litres left).	• Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.
		• Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. ➡ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 306
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	• Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: - Supplemental Restraint System - Side airbag system - Side curtain airbag system* - Seat belt tensioner	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Low Temperature Indicator (Blue)	• Comes on when the engine coolant temperature is low.	• If the indicator stays on after the engine has reached normal operating temperature, there may be a problem with the temperature sensors. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

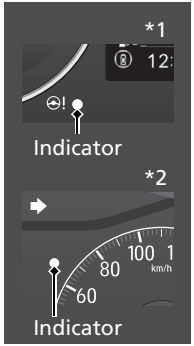
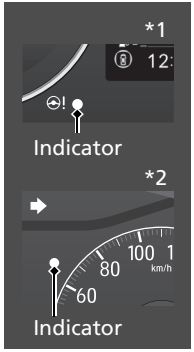
* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	• Blinks when VSA is active.	—
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system, brake assist system, hill start assist system, starting assist brake function*, or agile handling assist.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System** P. 240 ➡ **Brake Assist System** P. 307 ➡ **Hill Start Assist System** P. 227 ➡ **Starting Assist Brake Function** P. 239 ➡ **Agile Handling Assist** P. 242
		• Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF** Indicator	• Comes on when you partially disable VSA.	➡ **VSA On and Off** P. 241
		• Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On** P. 409 • **Do Not Drive displays on the driver information interface** - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer. ➡ **If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On** P. 409

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	• Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever. • Blinks along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.	• **Does not blink or blinks rapidly** ➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 348
		• Blinks along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving.	➡ **Emergency Stop Signal** P. 308
	Lights On Indicator	• Comes on when the position, tail, and other external lights are on.	➡ **Light Switches** P. 167
	High-Beam Indicator	• Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.	—
	Auto High-Beam Indicator	• Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met.	➡ **Auto High-Beam** P. 171

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Immobilizer System Indicator	• Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information.	• **Blinks** - You cannot start the engine. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then select the ON mode again. • **Repeatedly blinks** - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.
	Security System Alarm Indicator	• Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.	**Security System Alarm** P. 160

*1:Models with A-type meter
*2:Models with B-type meter

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	ECON Mode Indicator	• Comes on when the ECON mode is on.	➡ **ECON Mode** P. 235
	System Message Indicator	• Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.	• While the indicator is on, press the (home) button, and select to see the message again. ➡ **Switching the Display** P. 102, 123 • Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Respond to the message accordingly. • The driver information interface does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the left selector wheel is pressed.
	Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber)*	• Comes on when the Auto Idle Stop system has been turned off by the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button.	➡ **Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF** P. 237
		• Blinks if there is a problem with the Auto Idle Stop system.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)*	• Comes on when Auto Idle Stop is in operation. The engine automatically shuts off.	➡ **Auto Idle Stop*** P. 236

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with ACC.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the ACC is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. • ACC has been automatically cancelled.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 220 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when you press the button. • Lights up in green while the system is in operation.	➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)** P. 267

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 220 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when you press the LKAS button. • Lights up in green when the LKAS is in operation.	➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 284
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera.	• The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time. ➡ **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 98
		Models with A-type meter • Comes on when the CMBS is off.	➡ **Safety Support** P. 108
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)*	• Comes on when the CMBS is off.	➡ **Safety Support** P. 131

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation System or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera.	• The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time. ➡ **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 98
		Models with A-type meter • Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System steering assist is automatically turned off.	➡ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 259
		Models with A-type meter • Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System is off.	➡ **Safety Support** P. 108
	Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator*	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System steering assist is automatically turned off.	➡ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 259
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)*	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System is off.	➡ **Safety Support** P. 131

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation system or CMBS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 220 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected and then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation system and/or CMBS shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 302
			• **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message are still displayed even after you have cleaned the area around the camera. ➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 302 • It may come on when the ambient conditions are dark, such as when driving in a tunnel, or at night, dawn, or dusk.
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)	• Lights up in green when the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are on. • Lights up in green and grey when one or more of the systems above are off. • Lights up in grey when all systems above are off.	➡ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 259 ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 246

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, fuel gauge, and other related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

■ Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches E. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

After lightly refueling, or depending on your vehicle's condition, the actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

Tachometer

Models with B-type Meter

You can turn the tachometer display on or off.

Settings P. 133

■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.
If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you set the power mode to ON, the **Outside Temperature Low** message appears on the driver information interface.

■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading by up to ±3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

■ Clock

Shows the clock.

■ Current Mode for ACC and the LKAS

Shows the current mode for ACC and LKAS.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) P. 267
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 284

Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilised.

You can adjust the temperature reading.

Settings P. 110, 133

Clock

You can adjust the time manually and change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

Clock P. 142

Driver Information Interface (A-type meter)

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer to have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the **Engine oil pressure low** or **Engine temperature too hot** message is displayed.

➢ **If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears** P. 407

➢ **Overheating** P. 403

■ Switching the Display

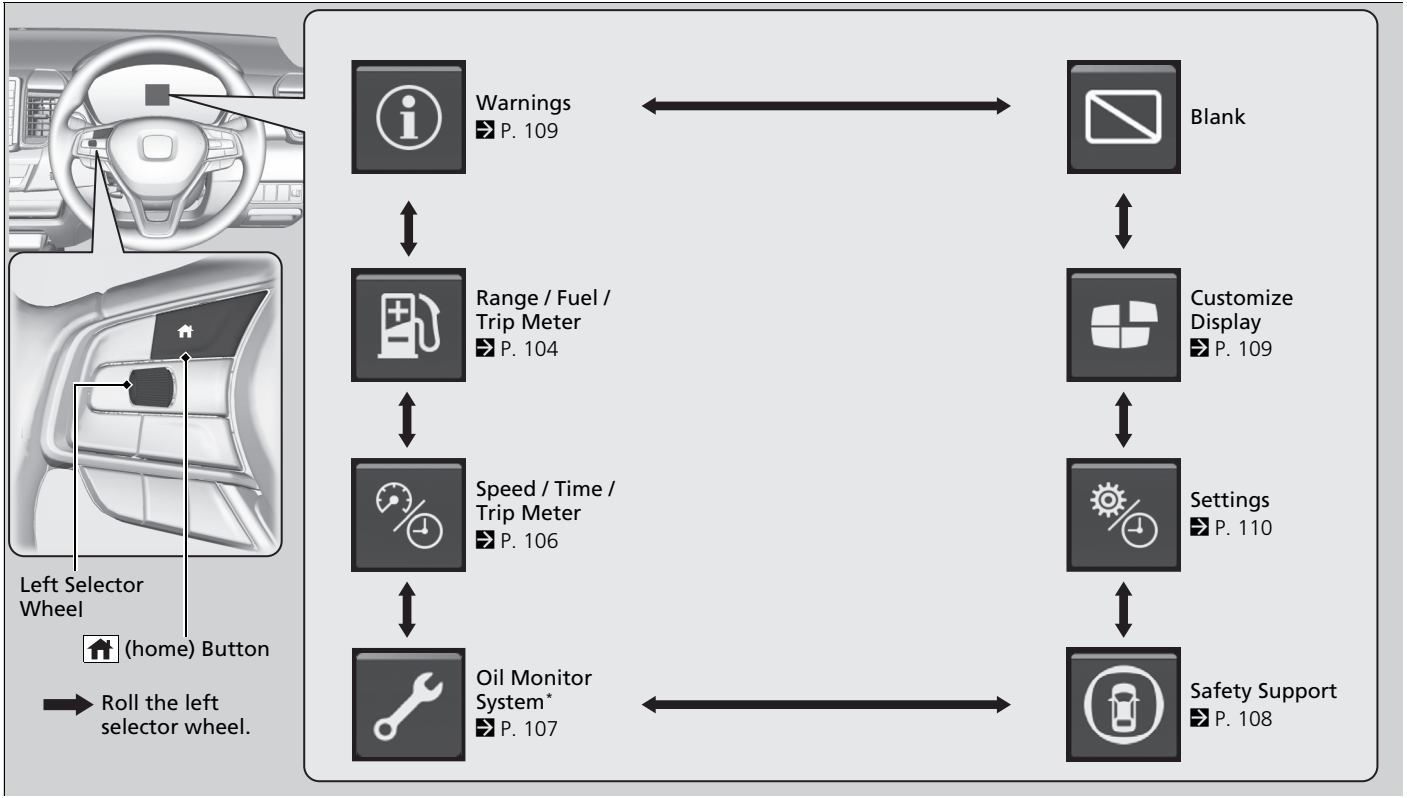
Press the (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

Switching the Display

To go back to the home screen, press the (home) button.

You can add or remove content from the driver information interface.

➢ **Customize Display** P. 109

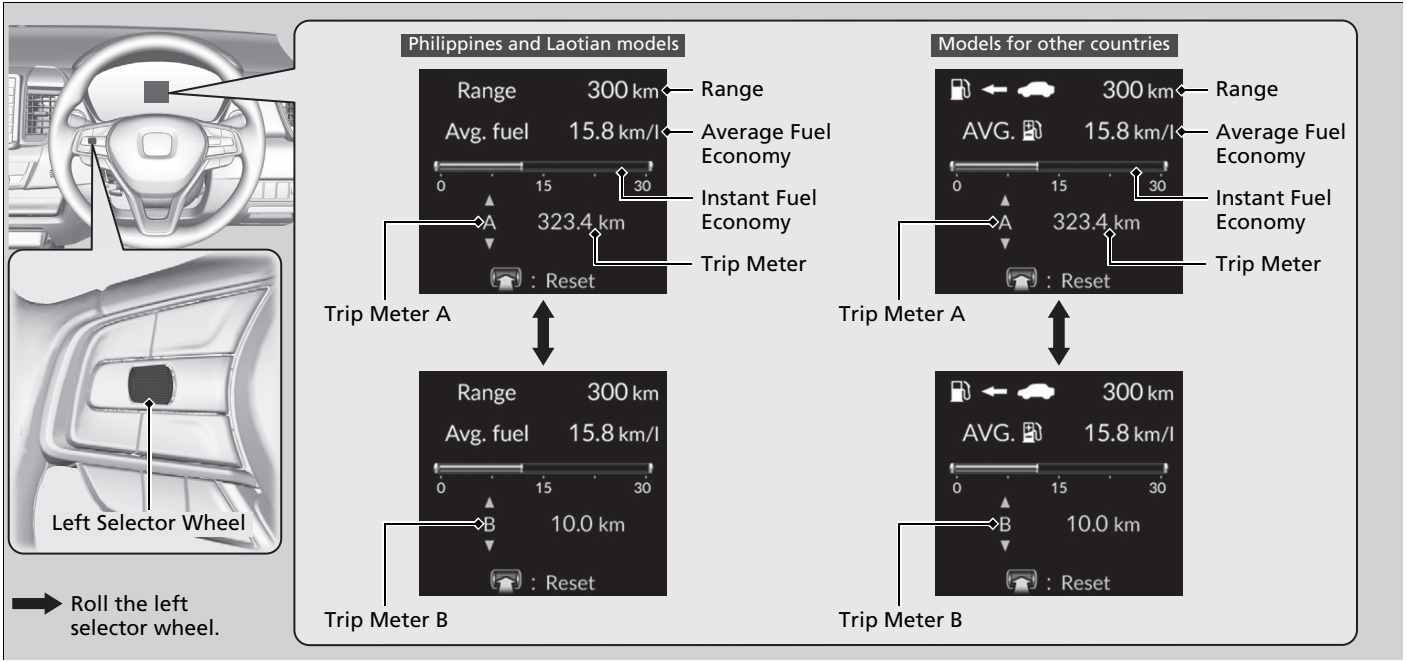


* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Range / Fuel / Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter

To reset the trip meter, display it, press the left selector wheel, and then select **Reset**.

▶ The trip meter is reset to 0.0.

■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l or l/100 km. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l or l/100 km.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

Range / Fuel / Trip Meter

You can change the unit of fuel consumption in either km/l and l/100km.

Settings P. 110

Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

Settings P. 110

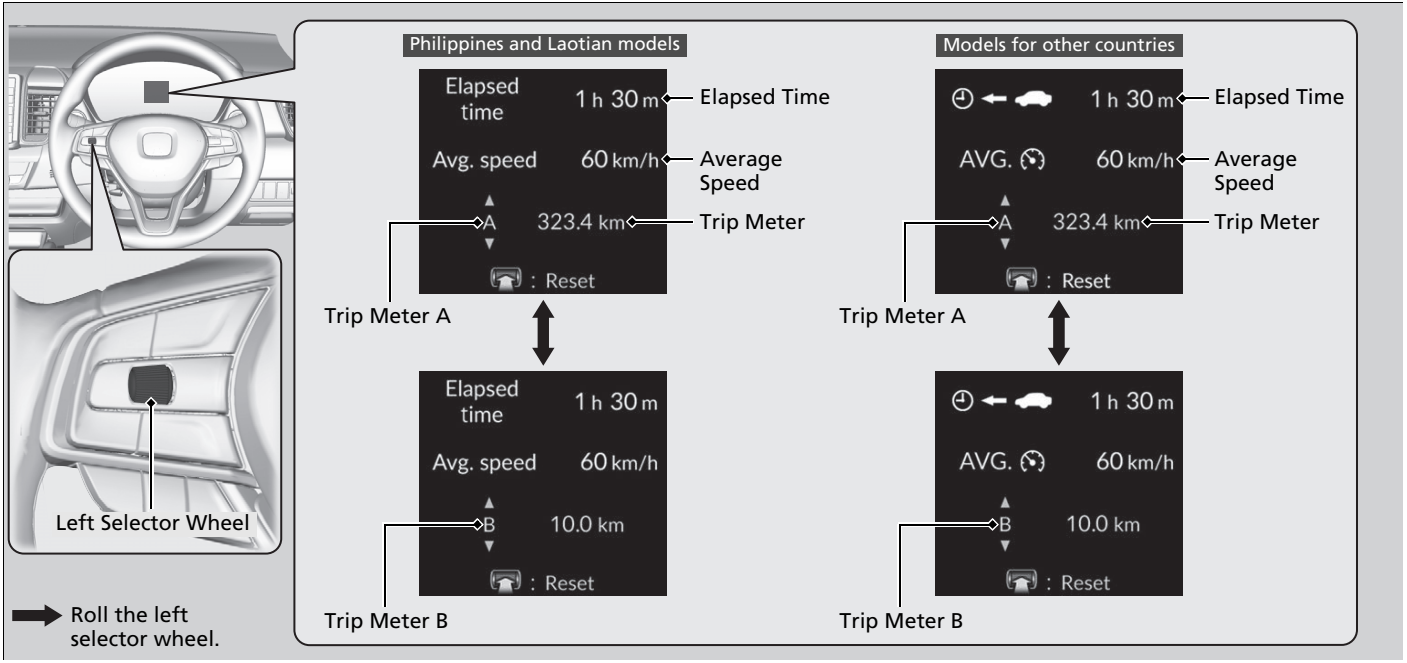
Range

The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ from the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

Continued

■ Speed / Time / Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



■ **Trip meter**

➡ **Trip meter** P. 105

■ **Elapsed time**

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Elapsed time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

➡ **Settings** P. 110

■ **Average speed**

Shows the average speed in km/h since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Average speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

➡ **Settings** P. 110

■ Oil Monitor System*

Show the oil monitor system.

➡ **Oil Monitor System*** P. 321

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Safety Support

Indicates the status of the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS, such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above-mentioned systems:

- Green: The system is on.
- Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.



Safety Support

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn each system on or off, first press the left selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display, you can select which system to turn on or off.

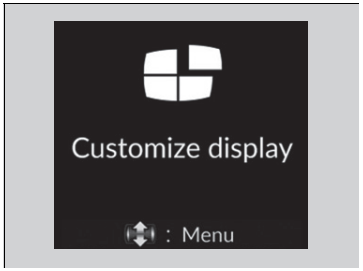
- **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 259
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 246

You can also confirm the status of each function by the colour of the indicator.

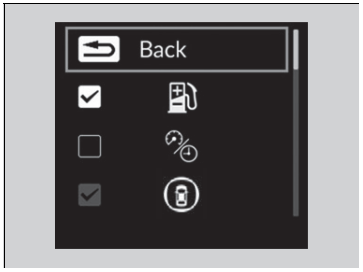
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)** P. 96
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)** P. 97
- **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 98
- **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)** P. 99

Customize Display

You can choose which icons to display on the home screen.



1. Roll the left selector wheel until is selected, then press the left selector wheel.
2. Roll the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between icons, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

Customize Display

Icons that are grey cannot be removed from the home screen.

When you customize settings, shift to P.

Warnings

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

Warnings

If there are multiple warnings, you can roll the left selector wheel to see other warnings.

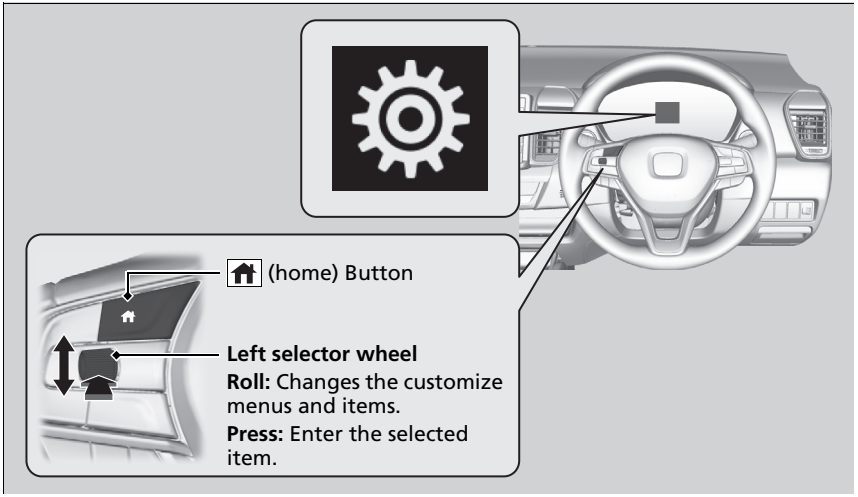
Continued

■ Settings

Use the driver information interface to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

Press the [home] (home) button, then select the [gear] screen by rolling the left selector wheel while the power mode is in ON, the vehicle is at a complete stop, and the shift position is in [P]. Then, press the left selector wheel.



Settings

To customize other features, roll the left selector wheel.

List of customizable options P. 111
Example of customization settings P. 119

When you customize settings, shift to [P].

■ **List of customizable options**

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Clock setup	**Adjust clock**	Adjusts the time. **Adjusting the Clock** P. 142	—
	Clock display	Sets time display 24 hour, 12 hour or off.	**24h/12h**[*1]**/OFF**
Driver assist system setup	Philippines and Laotian models **Forward collision warning distance** Models for other countries **Preceding vehicle proximity warning distance**	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts.	Philippines and Laotian models **Long/Normal**[*1]**/Short** Models for other countries **Far/Normal**[*1]**/Near**
	Philippines and Laotian models **ACC forward vehicle detect beep** Models for other countries **ACC vehicle ahead detected beep**	Causes the system to beep when a vehicle is detected or when the vehicle is out of ACC range.	**ON/OFF**[*1]
	Lead car departure notification system	Changes the setting for the lead car departure notification system.	**Normal**[*1]**/Early/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Driver assist system setup	**Road departure mitigation setting**	Changes the setting for the Road Departure Mitigation system.	Philippines and Laotian models **Narrow/Normal*1/Wide/ Warning only** Models for other countries **Early/Normal*1/Delayed/ Warning only**
	Philippines and Laotian models **Lane keeping assist suspend beep** Models for other countries **Lane keep assist beep**	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	**ON/OFF*1**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter setup	**Adjust outside temp. display**	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	**-3°C** ~ **±0°C**[*1] ~ **+3°C**
	"Trip A" reset timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	Philippines and Laotian models **When fully refueled/IGN OFF/ Manually reset**[*1] Models for other countries **When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/ Manual reset**[*1]
	"Trip B" reset timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	Philippines and Laotian models **When fully refueled/IGN OFF/ Manually reset**[*1] Models for other countries **When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/ Manual reset**[*1]

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter setup	Philippines and Laotian models **Adjust alarm volume** Models for other countries **Alarm volume control**	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	Philippines and Laotian models **High/Mid***1**/Low** Models for other countries **Max/Mid***1**/Min**
	Fuel efficiency backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	**ON***1**/OFF**
	Rear seat reminder	Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off.	**ON***1**/OFF**
	Fuel economy unit	Selects the fuel economy unit.	**km/l***1**/l/100km**
Keyless access setup*	**Keyless access beep volume**	Changes the beep tone that sounds when you have a keyless remote and grab a front door handle.	**High***1**/Low**
	Keyless access beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON***1**/OFF**
	Remote start system ON/OFF	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	**ON***1**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Lighting setup	Philippines and Laotian models **Auto high-beam** Models for other countries **Auto High-Beam**	Turns the auto high-beam on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Philippines and Laotian models **Interior light dimming time** Models for other countries **Interior light dimmer duration**	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	**60sec/30sec**[*1]**/15sec**
	Philippines and Laotian models **Headlight auto off timer** Models for other countries **Headlight auto OFF timer**	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	**60sec/30sec/15sec**[*1]**/0sec**

*1:Default Setting

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Lighting setup	Philippines and Laotian models **Auto interior illumination sensitivity** Models for other countries **Instrument illumination sensitivity**	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position.	**Max/High/Mid**[*1]**/Low/Min**
	Philippines and Laotian models **Auto headlight ON with wiper ON** Models for other countries **Headlight integration with wipers**	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door setup	**Auto door lock**	Changes the setting for when the doors and the tailgate automatically lock.	**With vehicle speed**[*1]**/Shift from P/OFF**
	Auto door unlock	Changes the setting for when the doors and the tailgate automatically unlock.	**Shift to P**[*1]**/IGN OFF/OFF**
	Walk away auto lock[*]	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote.	**ON/OFF**[*1]
	Philippines and Laotian models **Keyless lock answer back** Models for other countries **Keyless lock notification**	LOCK/UNLOCK - The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push) - The beeper sounds.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Security relock timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	**90sec/60sec/30sec**[*1]

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

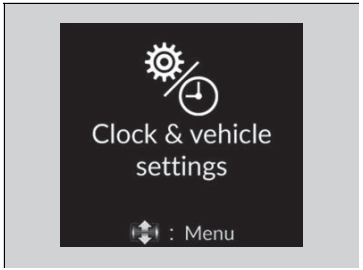
Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Maintenance reset*	—	Resets the oil monitor system information when you have performed the maintenance service.	**Cancel/Reset**
Default all	—	Cancels customized changes you have made or restores them to their default setting.	Philippines and Laotian models **Cancel/Set** Models for other countries **Cancel/OK**

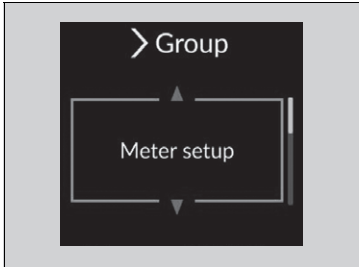
* Not available on all models

■ Example of customization settings

The steps for changing the **"Trip A" reset timing** setting to **When fully refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **"Trip A" reset timing** is **Manually reset**[*1]/**Manual reset**[*2].



1. Press the (home) button and roll the left selector wheel to select , then press the left selector wheel.



2. Roll the left selector wheel until **Meter setup** appears on the display.
3. Press the left selector wheel.

*1: Philippines and Laotian models
*2: Models for other countries

Continued

Philippines and Laotian models



Models for other countries

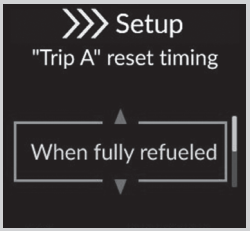


4. Roll the left selector wheel until **"Trip A" reset timing** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.

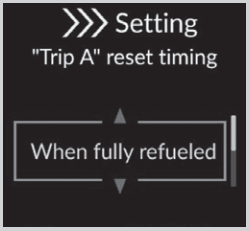
▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When fully refueled**, **IGN OFF**[*1]/**When ignition is turned OFF**[*2], **Manually reset**[*1]/**Manual reset**[*2], or **Back**.

*1: Philippines and Laotian models
*2: Models for other countries

Philippines and Laotian models



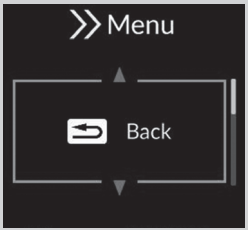
Models for other countries



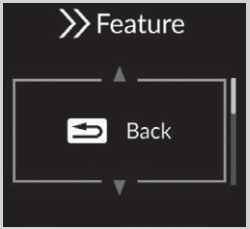
5. Roll the left selector wheel and select **When Fully Refueled**, then press the left selector wheel.
▶ The display will return to the customization menu screen.

Continued

Philippines and Laotian models



Models for other countries



6. Roll the left selector wheel until **Back** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.

7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

Driver Information Interface (B-type Meter)

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer to have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the **Engine Oil Pressure Low** or **Engine Temperature Too Hot** message is displayed.

If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears P. 407

Overheating P. 403

■ Switching the Display

Press the (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

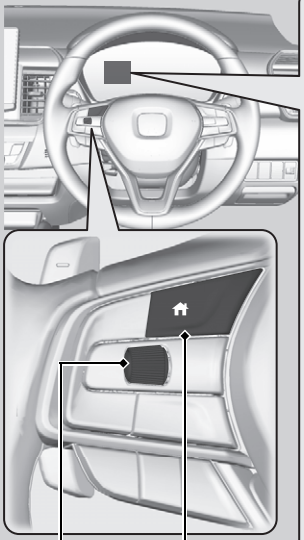
Switching the Display

To go back to the home screen, press the (home) button.

You can add or remove content from the driver information interface.

Customize Display P. 132

Continued



Tachometer
P. 125

Range & Fuel
P. 126

Speed & Time
P. 128

G-meter
P. 130

Seat Belts
P. 130

Information
P. 132

Customize Display
P. 132

Settings
P. 133

Safety Support
P. 131

■ Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute and other contents will hide.

Tachometer

The tachometer can be turned on and off using **Settings**.

➡ **Settings** P. 133

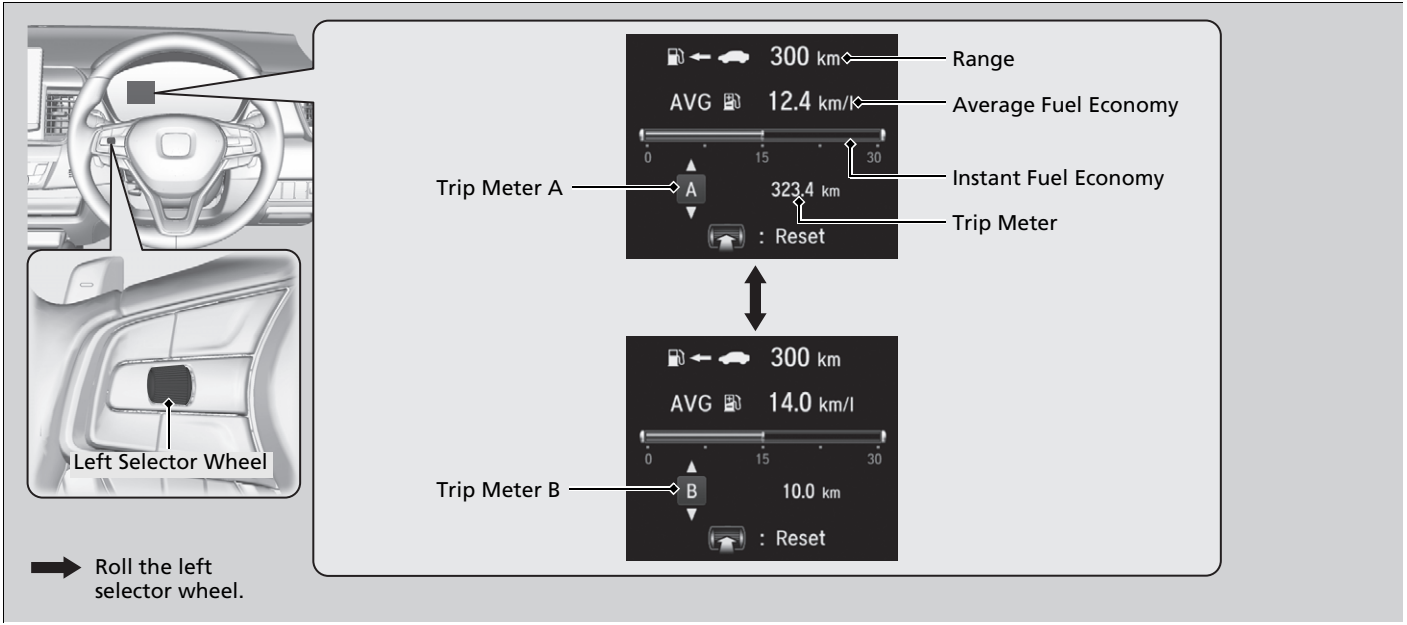
Even if you have turned off the tachometer using **Settings**, if **Tachometer** is selected on the driver information interface, it will change to a tachometer-only display.

➡ **Switching the Display** P. 123

Continued

■ Range/Fuel/Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



■ Trip meter
Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter
To reset the trip meter, display it, press the left selector wheel, and then select **Reset**.
▶ The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

■ Average fuel economy
Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l.
The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant fuel economy
Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l.

■ Range
Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

Average fuel economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.
➡ **Settings** P. 133

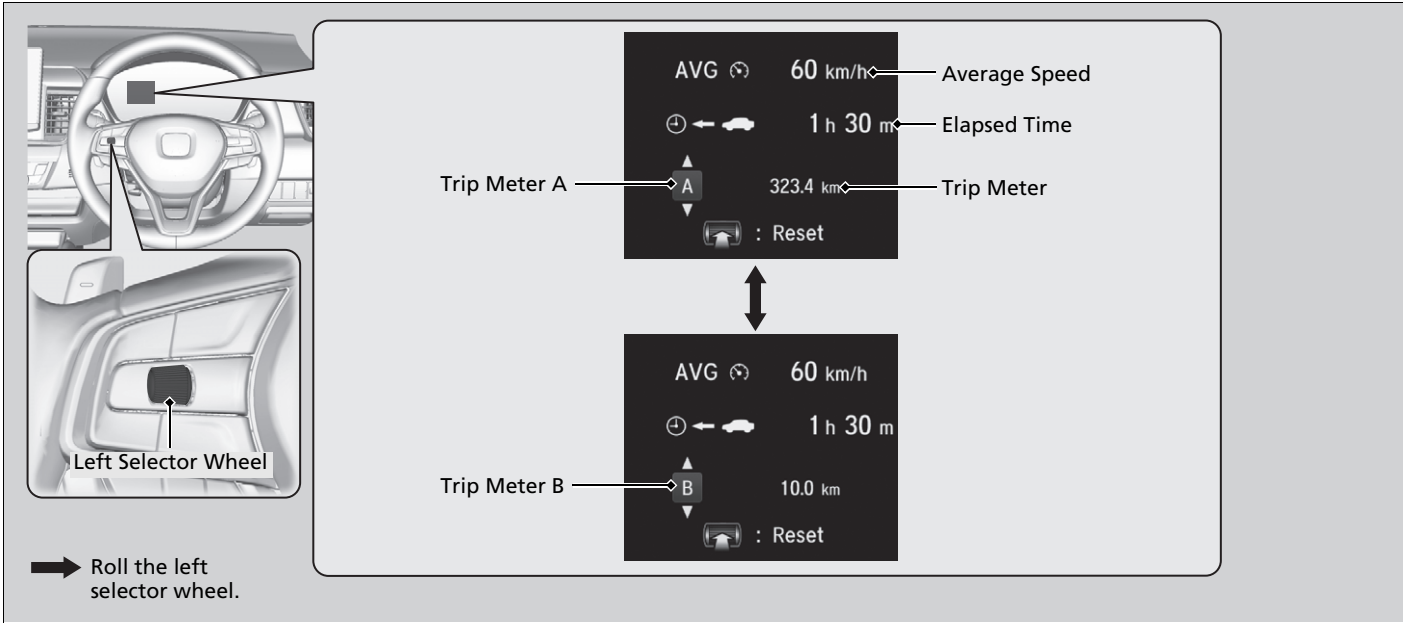
Range

The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ from the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

Continued

■ Speed/Time/Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



■ Trip meter

➡ **Trip meter** P. 127

■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Average Speed

Shows the average speed in km/h since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

➡ **Settings** P. 133

Average Speed

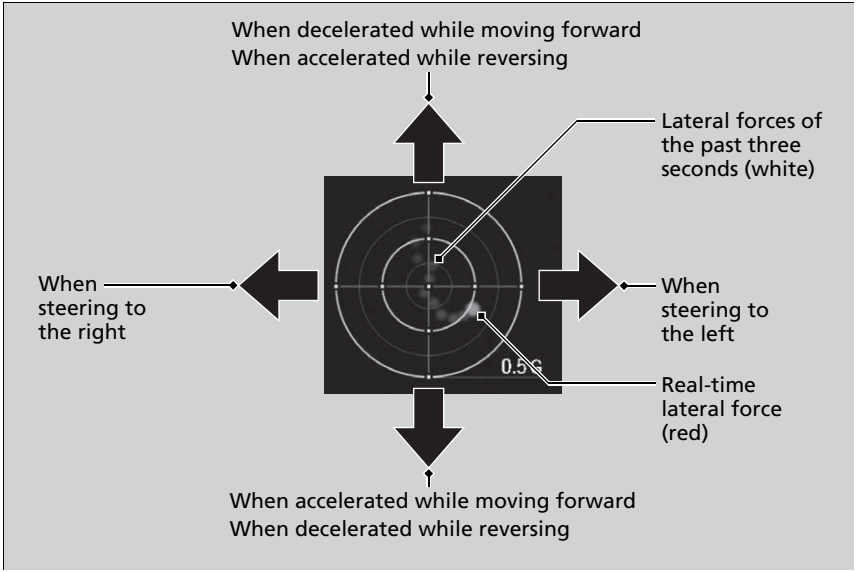
You can change when to reset the average speed.

➡ **Settings** P. 133

Continued

■ G-meter

Displays the strength (G) and direction of the load that is applied to the vehicle during driving.



■ Seat Belts

Occurs, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

Seat Belt Reminder P. 38

Safety Support

Indicates the status of the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS, such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above-mentioned systems:
- Green: The system is on.
- Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.



Safety Support

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn each system on or off, first rotate the left selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display, you can select which system to turn on or off.
- **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 259
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 246

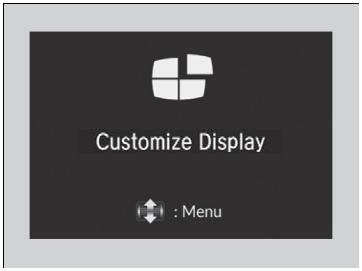
You can also confirm the status of each function by the colour of the indicator.
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)** P. 96
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)*** P. 96
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)** P. 97
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)*** P. 97
- **Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator*** P. 97
- **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 98
- **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)** P. 99

* Not available on all models

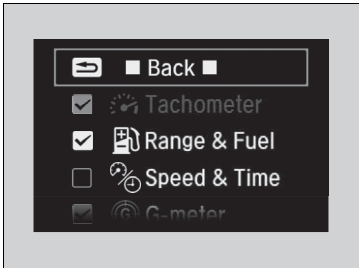
Continued

■ Customize Display

You can choose which icons to display on the home screen.



1. Roll the left selector wheel until **Customize Display** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.
2. Roll the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between icons, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

■ Information

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

Customize Display

Icons that are grey cannot be removed from the home screen.

When you customize settings, shift to P.

Information

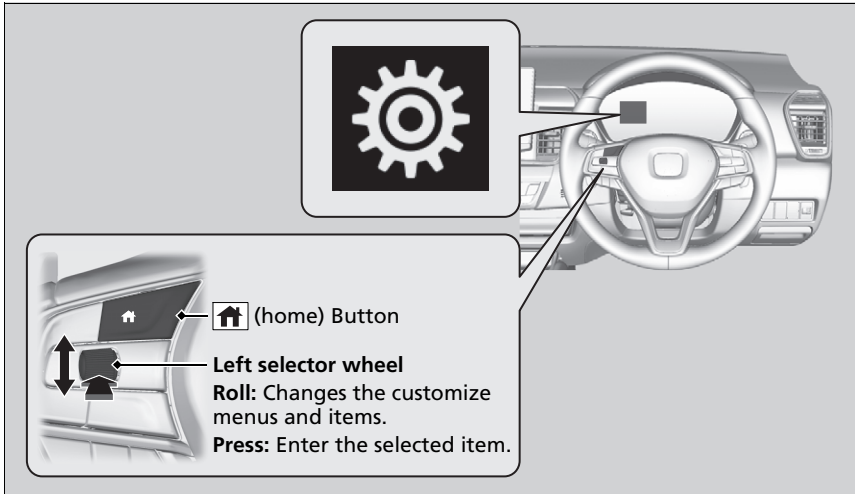
If there are multiple warnings or informations, you can roll the left selector wheel to see other warnings.

Settings

Use the driver information interface to customize certain features.

How to customize

Press the (home) button, then select the screen by rolling the left selector wheel while the power mode is in ON, the vehicle is at a complete stop, and the shift position is in P. Then, press the left selector wheel.



Settings

To customize other features, roll the left selector wheel.

List of customizable options P. 134
Example of customization settings P. 138

When you customize settings, shift to P.

Continued

■ **List of customizable options**

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Clock Setup	**Clock Adjustment**	Adjusts the time. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 142	—
	Clock Display	Sets time display 24 hour, 12 hour or off.	**24h/12h**[*1]**/OFF**
Driver Assist System Setup	**Preceding Vehicle Proximity Warning Distance**	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts.	**Far/Normal**[*1]**/Near**
	ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep	Causes the system to beep when a vehicle is detected or when the vehicle is out of ACC range.	**ON/OFF**[*1]
	Road Departure Mitigation Setting	Changes the setting for the Road Departure Mitigation system.	**Early/Normal**[*1]**/Delayed/ Warning Only**
	Lane Keep Assist Beep	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	**ON/OFF**[*1]
	Lead Car Departure Notification System	Changes the setting for the lead car departure notification system.	**Normal**[*1]**/Early/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter Setup	**Adjust Outside Temp. Display**	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	**-3°C ~ ±0°C**[*1] **~ +3°C**
	"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	**When Fully Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned OFF/ Manual Reset**[*1]
	"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	**When Fully Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned OFF/ Manual Reset**[*1]
	Alarm Volume Control	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	**Max/Mid**[*1]**/Min**
	Fuel Efficiency Backlight*	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Rear Seat Reminder	Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Tachometer	Selects whether the tachometer is displayed on the driver information interface.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless Access Setup	**Keyless Access Beep Volume**	Changes the beep tone that sounds when you have a keyless remote and grab a front door handle.	**High**[*1]**/Low**
	Keyless Access Beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Remote Start System ON/OFF	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Lighting Setup	**Auto High-Beam**	Turns the auto high-beam on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Interior Light Dimmer Duration	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	**60sec/30sec**[*1]**/15sec**
	Headlight Auto OFF Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	**60sec/30sec/15sec**[*1]**/0sec**
	Instrument Illumination Sensitivity	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position.	**Max/High/Mid**[*1]**/Low/Min**
	Headlight Integration With Wipers	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

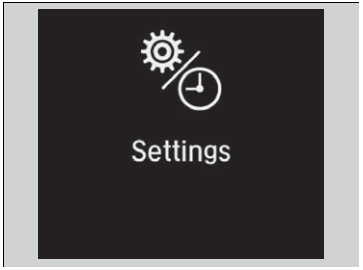
*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door Setup	**Auto Door Lock**	Changes the setting for when the doors and the tailgate automatically lock.	**With Vehicle Speed**[*1]**/Shift From P/OFF**
	Auto Door Unlock	Changes the setting for when the doors and the tailgate automatically unlock.	**Shift To P**[*1]**/IGN OFF/OFF**
	Walk Away Lock	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote.	**ON/OFF**[*1]
	Keyless Lock Notification	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	**90sec/60sec/30sec**[*1]
	Auto Folding Door Mirror	Changes how you can fold the door mirrors.	**Auto Fold With Keyless**[*1]**/ Manual Only**
Default All	—	Cancels customized changes you have made or restores them to their default setting.	**Cancel/OK**

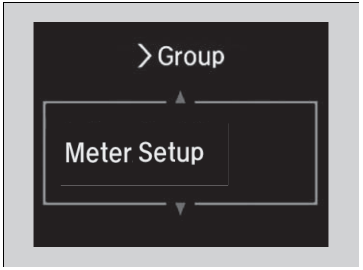
*1:Default Setting

■ **Example of customization settings**

The steps for changing the **"Trip A" Reset Timing** setting to **When Fully Refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **"Trip A" Reset Timing** is **Manual Reset**.



1. Press the (home) button and roll the left selector wheel to select , then press the left selector wheel.

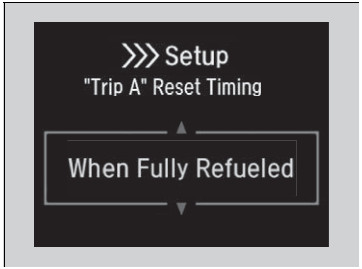


2. Roll the left selector wheel until **Meter Setup** appears on the display.

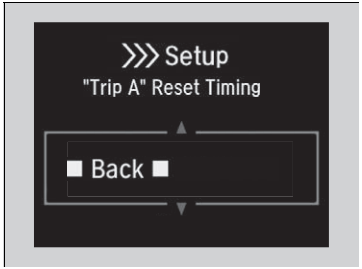
3. Press the left selector wheel.



4. Roll the left selector wheel until **"Trip A" Reset Timing** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.
▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When Fully Refueled**, **When Ignition Is Turned OFF**, **Manual Reset**, or **Back**.



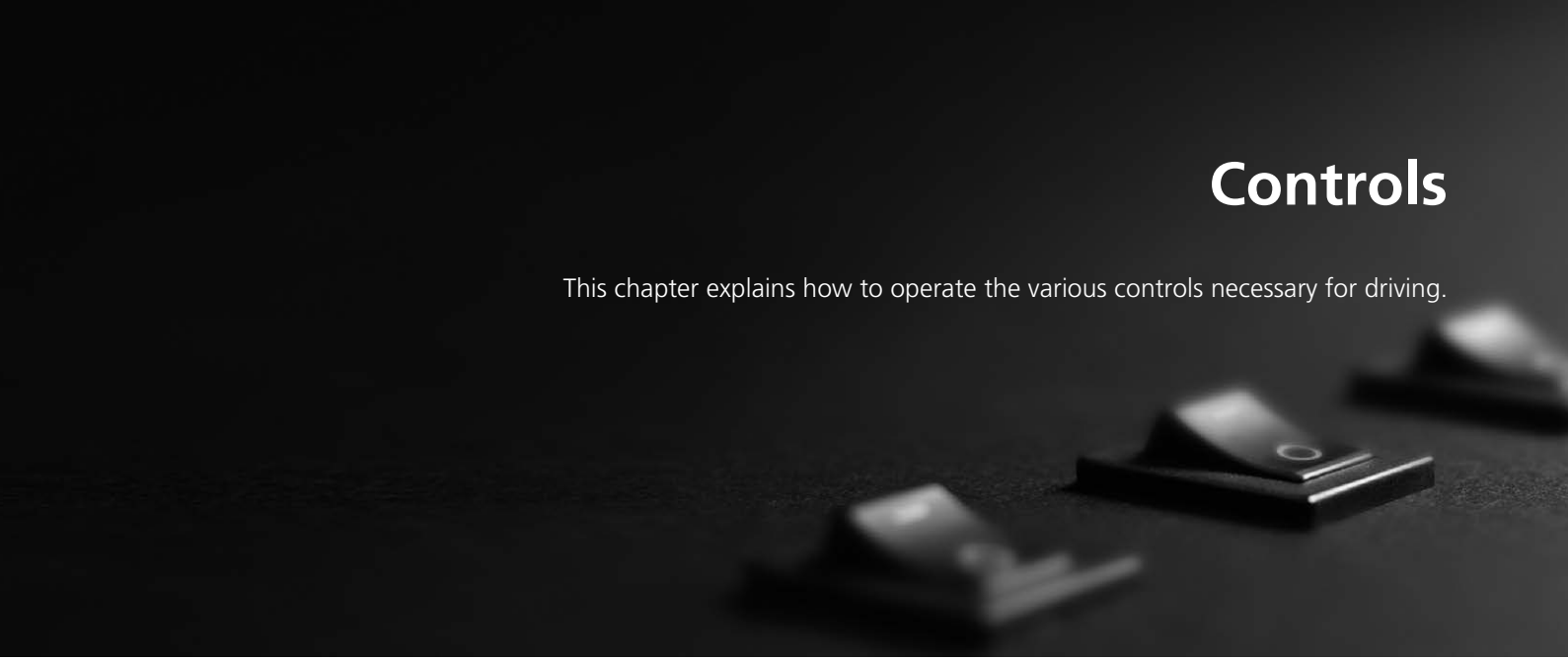
5. Roll the left selector wheel and select **When Fully Refueled**, then press the left selector wheel.
▶ The display will return to the customization menu screen.



6. Roll the left selector wheel until **Back** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.
7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.



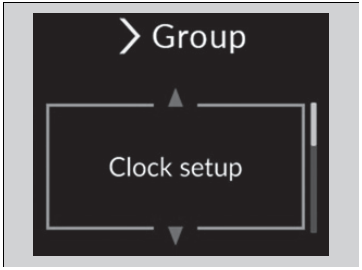
Clock 142
Locking and Unlocking the Doors
Key 145
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 147
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 154
Childproof Door Locks 155
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 156
Tailgate 157
Security System
Immobilizer System 159
Security System Alarm 160
Windows 161
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel
ENGINE START/STOP Button 163
Turn Signals 166
Light Switches 167
Headlight Adjuster* 170
Auto High-Beam 171
Daytime Running Lights 174
Wipers and Washers 175
Brightness Control 178
Rear Demister Button 179
Adjusting the Steering Wheel 180
Mirrors
Interior Rearview Mirror 181
Power Door Mirrors 182
Seats
Front Seats 184
Rear Seats 187
Armrest 195
Interior Convenience Items 196
Cooling System*
Using Vents and A/C 206
Climate Control System*
Using Automatic Climate Control 209
Automatic Climate Control Sensors 213

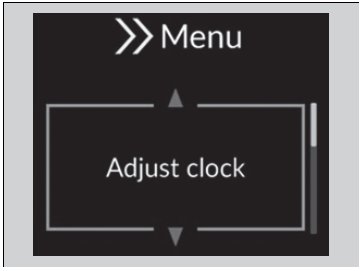
* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time in the clock display when the power mode is in ON.

■ Adjusting the Time





Models with A-type meter

1. Select the **Settings** screen.
➡ **Settings** P. 110

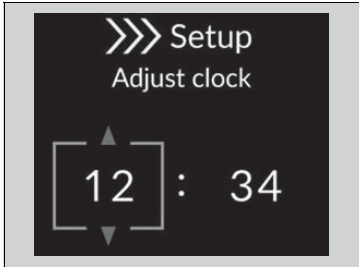
2. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Clock setup**, then push the left selector wheel.

3. Roll the left selector wheel until **Adjust clock** appears on the display.

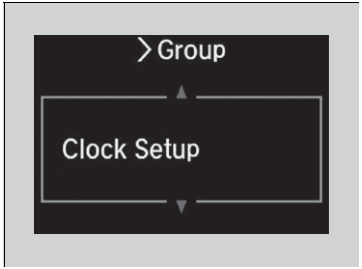
4. Push the left selector wheel.

Adjusting the Time

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.
➡ **Settings** P. 110, 133

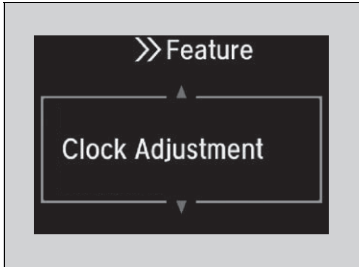


5. Roll the left selector wheel to change hour, then push the left selector wheel.
6. Roll the left selector wheel to change minute, then push the left selector wheel.
7. Press the button to return to the normal screen.



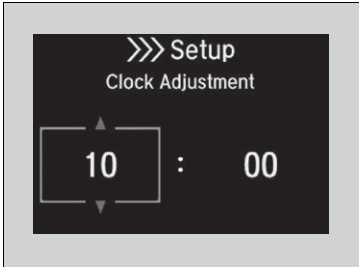
Models with B-type meter

1. Select the **Settings** screen.
Settings P. 133
2. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Clock Setup**, then push the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel until **Clock Adjustment** appears on the display.
4. Push the left selector wheel.

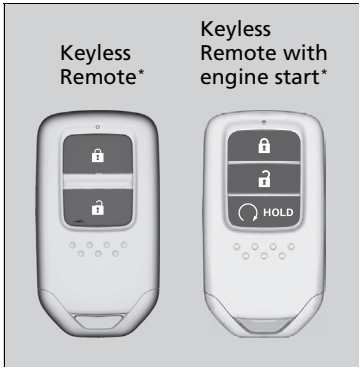
Continued



5. Roll the left selector wheel to change hour, then push the left selector wheel.
6. Roll the left selector wheel to change minute, then push the left selector wheel.
7. Press the button to return to the normal screen.

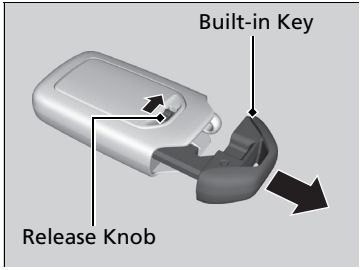
Key

This vehicle comes with the following keys:



Use the keys to start and stop the engine, lock and unlock all the doors, and open the tailgate.

Built-in Key



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.
To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

Key

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 159

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust, and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except to replace the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.
If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

Models with remote engine start

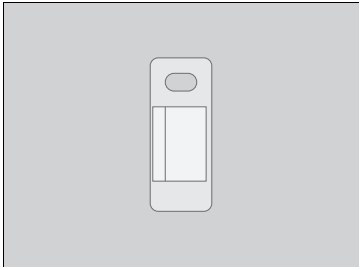
You can remotely start the engine using the remote engine start.

➡ **Remote Engine Start*** P. 224

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote to start the engine and lock and unlock* all the doors and tailgate.

In the following cases, starting the engine and locking/unlocking* the doors and tailgate may be inhibited, or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

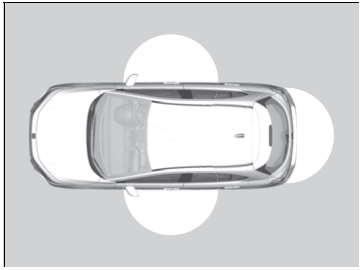
Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery. Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.
The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

It is possible to reduce battery consumption by turning off radio wave reception. When you hold down the lock and unlock buttons at the same time for approximately three seconds, the LED will blink twice and radio wave reception will turn off.
If you press any button on the keyless remote once, it will begin receiving radio waves again.

* Not available on all models

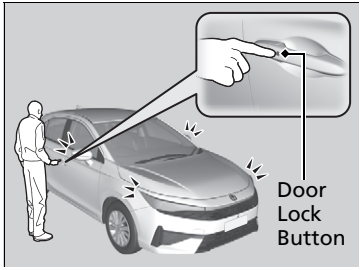
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Keyless Access System*



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and open the tailgate.

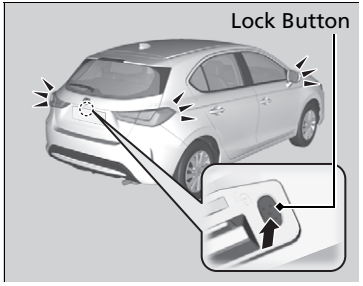
You can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate within a radius of about 80 cm from the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle.



■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Press the door lock button on the front door or the tailgate.

▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all the doors and the tailgate lock; and the security system sets.



Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors.
No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.
Doors relocked with the remote: The light goes off immediately.

➡ **Interior Lights** P. 196

Using the Keyless Access System*

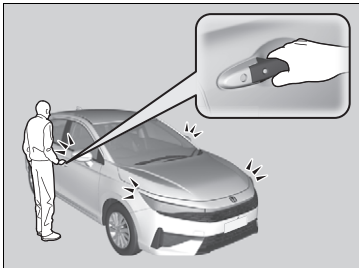
If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The keyless access system will not lock the vehicle when a door or the tailgate is open.

* Not available on all models

Continued

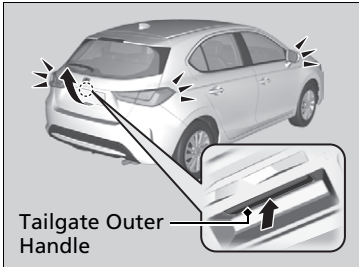


■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Grab the front door handle:

▶ All the doors and the tailgate unlock.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.



Press the tailgate outer handle.

▶ The tailgate and all doors unlock.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

➡ **Opening/Closing the Tailgate** P. 158

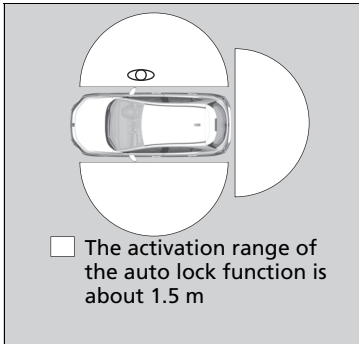
Using the Keyless Access System*

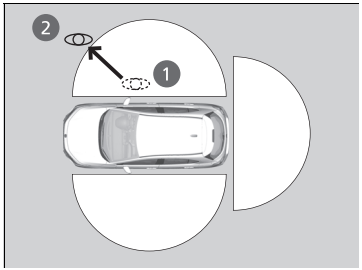
- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door, door glass, and tailgate.

The beep settings can be customized using the driver information interface.

➡ **Settings** P. 110, 133

 * Not available on all models





■ Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

When you walk away from the vehicle with all doors and tailgate closed while carrying the keyless remote, the doors and tailgate will automatically lock.

The auto lock function activates when all doors and tailgate are closed, and the keyless remote is within about 1.5 m radius of the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle. Exit the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote and close the door(s).

1. While within about 1.5 m radius of the vehicle.
▶ The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.

2. Carry the keyless remote beyond about 1.5 m from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.
▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors and tailgate will then lock.

Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the driver information interface.
If you set the auto lock function to ON using the driver information interface, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.
Settings P. 110, 133

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the keyless remote will continue to flash until the doors are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be cancelled.

Under the following circumstances, the auto lock function will not activate:
- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
  ▶The beeper will not sound.
- The keyless remote is taken out of its operational range before all the doors are closed.
  ▶The beeper will sound.

Continued

To temporarily deactivate the function:

1. Set the power mode to OFF.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:
Lock→Unlock→Lock→Unlock.
▶ The beeper sounds, and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- With the keyless remote on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
- A door or the bonnet is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The keyless remote is not located within a radius of about 1.5 m from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors.

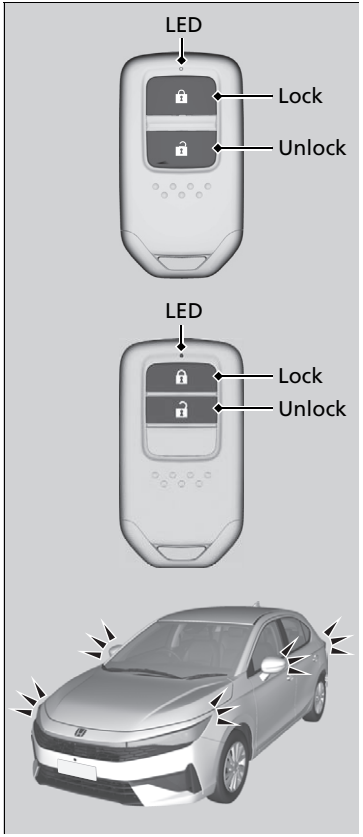
Auto lock function operation stop beeper

After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

- The keyless remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The keyless remote is put inside the tailgate.

If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Press the lock button.

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors and tailgate lock, and the security system sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

▶ The beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Press the unlock button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and all the doors and tailgate unlock.

Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.
You can change the relock timer setting.
➲ **Settings** P. 110, 133

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

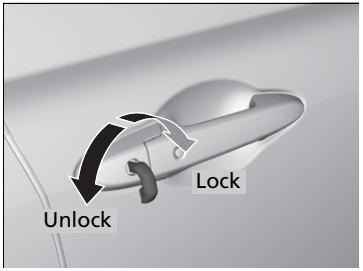
The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door or the tailgate is open.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.
➲ **Replacing the Remote Battery** P. 368

Continued

■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the lock or unlock button of the keyless remote does not work, use the key instead.



Fully insert the key and turn it.

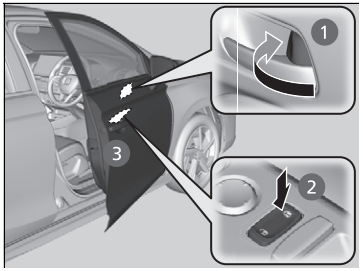
Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you lock/unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors and tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ❶ or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ❷, then pull and hold the outside door handle ❸. Close the door, then release the handle.

■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system

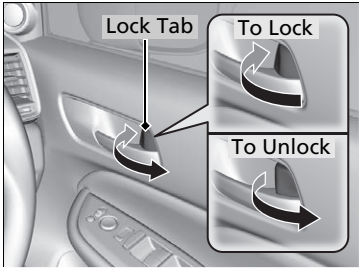
The doors and the tailgate cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.
Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

■ Using the Lock Tab



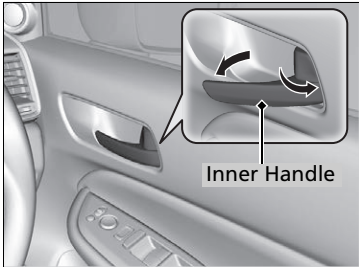
■ Locking a door
Push the lock tab forward.

■ Unlocking a door
Pull the lock tab rearward.

Using the Lock Tab

When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

■ Unlocking Using the Driver's Door Inner Handle



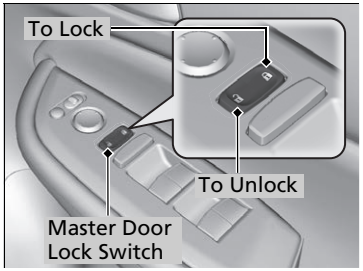
Pull the driver's door inner handle.
▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Unlocking Using the Driver's Door Inner Handle

The driver's door inner handle are designed to allow the driver to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that the driver never pull the door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.
➔ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 155

■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

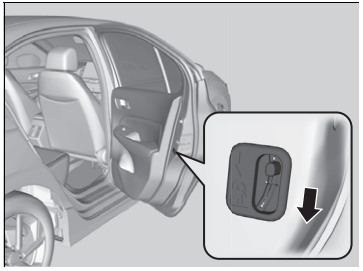


Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors and the tailgate.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Your vehicle locks or unlocks all doors automatically when a certain condition is met.

■ Auto Door Locking

■ Drive lock mode

All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.

■ Auto Door Unlocking

■ Park unlock mode

All doors unlock when the transmission is put into P with the brake pedal depressed.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the driver information interface.

Settings P. 110, 133

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

- Open the tailgate all the way.
  ▶ If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:
▶ Avoid possible damage.
▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.
➔ **Exhaust Gas Hazard** P. 80

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

⚠WARNING

Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the luggage area when closing the tailgate.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the luggage area while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

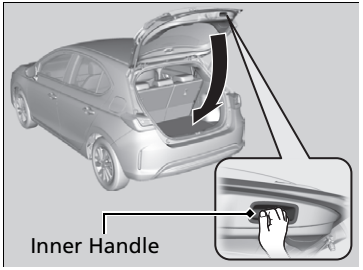
Opening/Closing the Tailgate



When all the doors are unlocked, the tailgate is unlocked. Press the tailgate outer handle and lift open the tailgate.

Models with keyless access system

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.



All models

To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.

Opening/Closing the Tailgate

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.

Models with keyless access system

- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.

Immobilizer System

This system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic devices, such as televisions and audio systems, emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, bonnet, or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the tailgate or doors are opened with the remote transmitter or keyless access system*.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and some exterior lights flash.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter or keyless access system*, or set the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the tailgate are locked from outside with the key, remote transmitter, or keyless access system*.

■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter or keyless access system*, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security system alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.
The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.
Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release.

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may sound once the battery is recharged or replaced.
If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system*.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

⚠WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

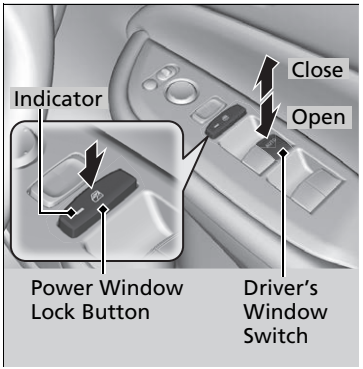
Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Opening either front door cancels this function.

Continued

■ Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



■ Manual operation

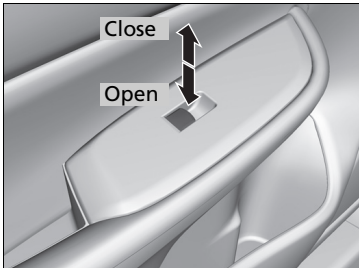
To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly.
To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

■ Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function



To open: Push the switch down.
To close: Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

Auto Reverse

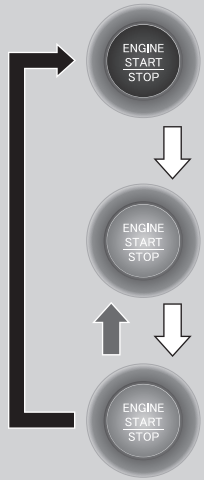
If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

ENGINE START/STOP Button

Changing the Power Mode



VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)
The button is off.
The steering wheel is locked.
The power to all electrical components is turned off.

ACCESSORY
The button blinks (in red).
Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.

ON
The button blinks (in red).
All electrical components can be used.

Without pressing the brake pedal

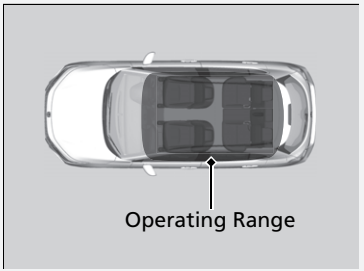
Press the button without the transmission in P.

Press the button with the transmission in P.

Press the button.

ENGINE START/STOP Button

ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range
You can start the engine when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.



If the battery of the keyless remote is getting low, the engine may not start when you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button. If the engine does not start, refer to the following link.

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak
P. 396

The engine may also run if the keyless remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

ON mode:
The **ENGINE START/STOP** button is on (in red), if the engine is running.

Continued

■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in P and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the battery.

When in this mode:
The steering wheel does not lock. You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system*.

Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

ENGINE START/STOP Button

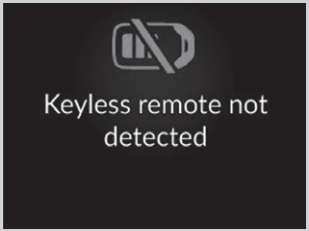
If the power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF to ACCESSORY, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the mode to change.

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

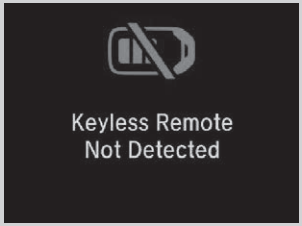
* Not available on all models

■ Keyless Remote Reminder

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote in another location.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

■ When the power mode is in ON

An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

Keyless Remote Reminder

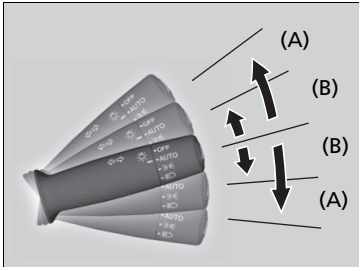
When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the power mode or restart the engine. Always make sure that the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to sound. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also sound even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ **(A): Turn signal**

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

■ **(B): One-touch turn signal**

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink 3 times.

▶ If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

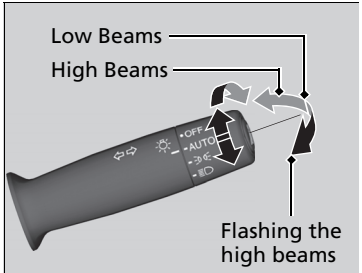
Turn Signals

The turn signal indicator on the instrument panel will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

Indicators P. 84

Light Switches

■ Manual Operation



Turns on position, tail, and rear licence plate lights

Turns on headlights, position, tail, and rear licence plate lights

Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the power mode setting.

■ High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

■ Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

■ Lights off

Turn the lever to **OFF** either when:

- The transmission is in P.
- The parking brake is applied.

To turn the lights on again, turn the lever to OFF to cancel the lights off mode. Even if you do not cancel the lights off mode, the lights come on automatically when:

- The transmission is taken out of P and the parking brake is released.
- The vehicle starts to move.

Light Switches

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

➡ **Indicators** P. 84

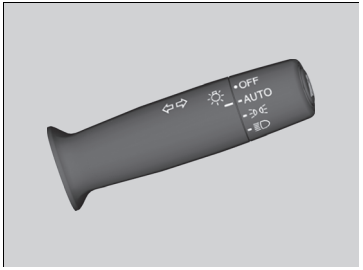
Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

Models without headlight adjuster

If you suspect that the headlights are not positioned properly, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Continued

■ Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)



Automatic lighting control can be used when the power mode is in ON.

When the light switch is in **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

The headlights come on when you unlock a door in dark areas with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

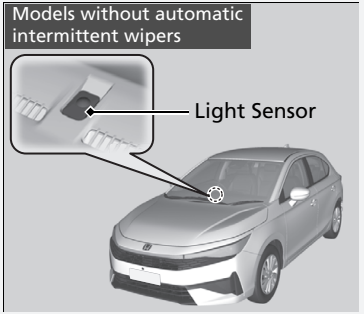
▶ Once you lock the door, the headlights will go off.

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)

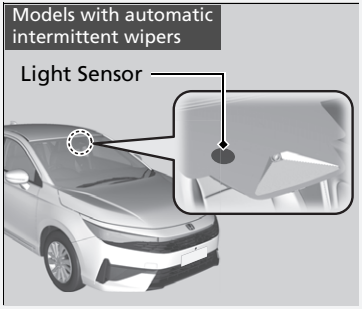
We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.

Models without automatic intermittent wipers



Models with automatic intermittent wipers



■ Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.
The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a reminder chime alerting you that the lights are on.

Headlight Integration with Wipers

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**.
The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

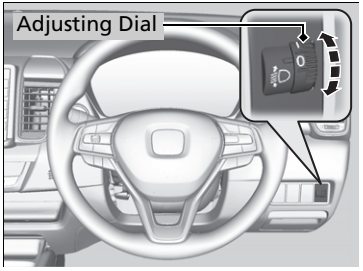
At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

You can turn the headlight integration with wipers function on and off.
Settings P. 110, 133

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.
Settings P. 110, 133

Headlight Adjuster*



You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights when the position lights or headlights are on.

Turn the adjustment dial to select an appropriate angle for the headlights.

The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

■ To select the adjustment dial position

Refer to the below table for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle's riding and loading conditions.

Condition	Dial position
A driver	0
A driver and a front passenger	
Five persons in the front and rear seats	1
Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	2
A driver and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	3

* Not available on all models

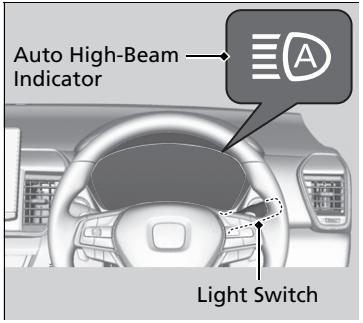
Auto High-Beam

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

■ How to Use the Auto High-Beam

■ Activating the system

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and automatically switches between the high beam and low beam, depending on the situation.



- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to AUTO then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

Auto High-Beam

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise light sources varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.

Front Wide View Camera P. 302

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean. When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply the windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker, or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

Continued

■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When the auto-high beam indicator comes on, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

High beam		Low beam
All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 30 km/h or more. • There are no preceding or oncoming vehicles with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are few street lights on the road ahead.		One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h or less. • There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are many street lights on the road ahead.

How to Use the Auto High-Beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. If the automatic switching operation does not fit your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from a preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources like street lights, electric billboards and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam on when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected a dense fog.

■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams and then release it.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to AUTO and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to AUTO.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

How to Use the Auto High-Beam

How to turn off the Auto High-Beam System

You can turn the auto high-beam system on and off.

Settings P. 110, 133

Daytime Running Lights

The position/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

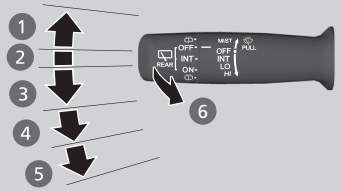
- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.

Setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF will turn off the daytime running lights.

The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the head light switch is in **AUTO** and it is getting darker outside.

Wipers and Washers

■ Windscreen Wipers/Washers



1 **MIST**
2 **OFF**
3 **INT**[*1]**/AUTO**[*2]
4 **LO**: Low speed wipe
5 **HI**: High speed wipe
6 Washer

The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT[*1]/AUTO[*2], LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, and then stop.

*1: Models with manual intermittent operation
*2: Models with automatic intermittent operation

Wipers and Washers

NOTICE
Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE
Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

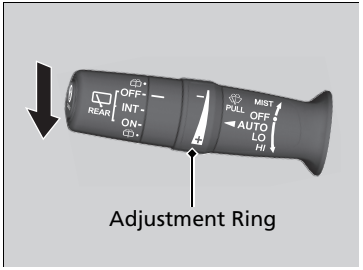
The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes.

NOTICE
In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen.
Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the buildup of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.
Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

Continued

■ Automatic Intermittent Wipers*



When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stop in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

Sensor sensitivity

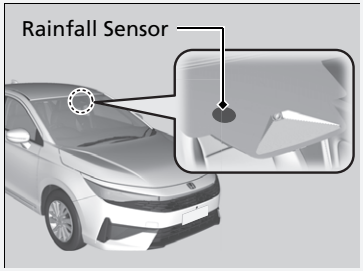


Low sensitivity

High sensitivity

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



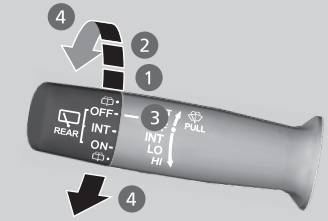
NOTICE

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

* Not available on all models

■ Rear Wiper/Washer



1 **INT**: Intermittent
2 **ON**: Continuous wipe
3 **OFF**
4 Washer

The rear wiper and washer can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Washer (⛲)

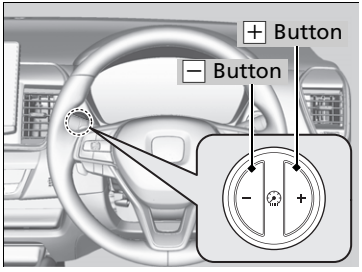
Sprays on the rear window while you rotate the switch to this position.
Hold it to activate the rear wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, the washer spray will stop and the rear wiper will return to its selected switch setting after a few sweeps.

■ Operating in reverse

When you shift the transmission to R with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Front Wiper Position	Rear Wiper Operation
Intermittent	Intermittent
Low speed wipe High speed wipe	Continuous

Brightness Control



When the power mode is in ON, you can use the + or − button to adjust instrument panel brightness.
Brighten: Press the + button.
Dim: Press the − button.

You will hear a beep when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. Several seconds after adjusting the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.



■ Brightness level indicator

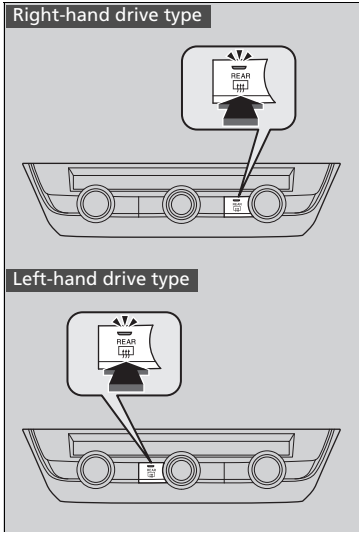
The brightness level is shown on the display while you are adjusting it.

Brightness Control

The brightness of the instrument panel will be reduced when the following conditions:
- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in any position other than off and it is dark outside.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

Rear Demister Button



Press the rear demister button to demist the rear window when the power mode is in ON.

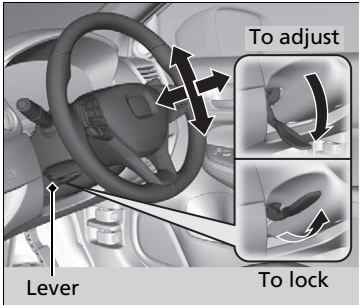
The rear demister automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature.
However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

Rear Demister Button

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. While the vehicle is stopped, push the steering wheel adjustment lever down.
▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up to lock the steering wheel in position.
▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠WARNING

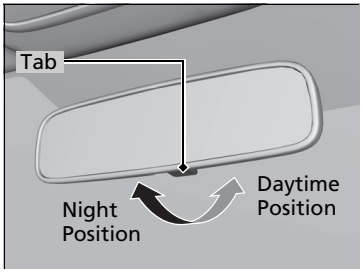
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Interior Rearview Mirror

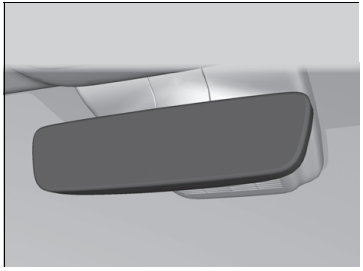
Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

■ Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*



Flip the tab to switch the position.
The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

■ Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*



When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based on inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active.

Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

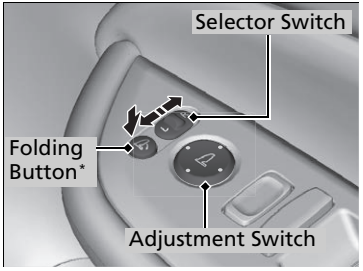
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.
➡ **Front Seats** P. 184

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*

The auto dimming function cancels the transmission is in R.

* Not available on all models

Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

■ **Mirror position adjustment**

L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

■ **Folding door mirrors***

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

 * Not available on all models

■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function*

■ Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the remote transmitter, or press the door lock button on any door.

▶ The mirrors start folding in automatically.

■ Folding out the door mirrors

Unlock all doors and the tailgate using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function*

You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

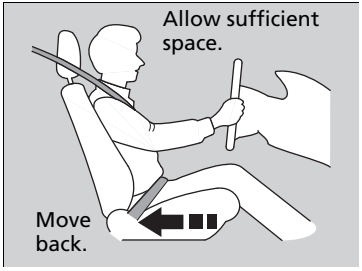
You can turn the automatic folding door mirror function on and off.

Settings P. 133

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

* Not available on all models

Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Seats

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

Front Seats

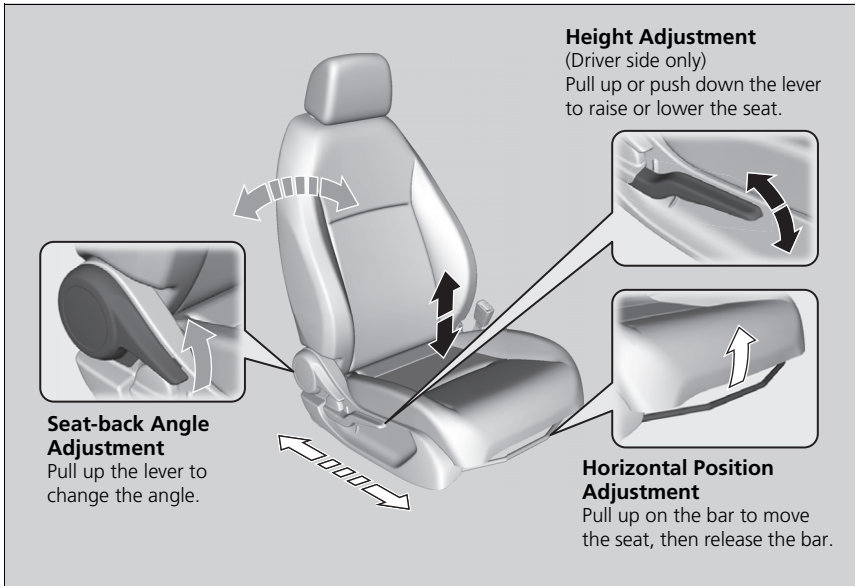
⚠WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

Adjusting the Seat Positions

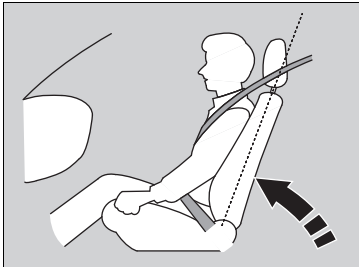


Adjusting the Seat Positions

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

Continued

■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

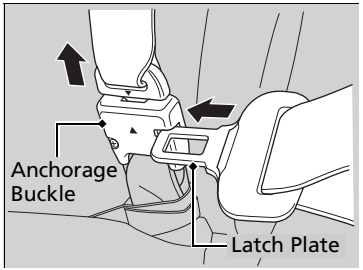
Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

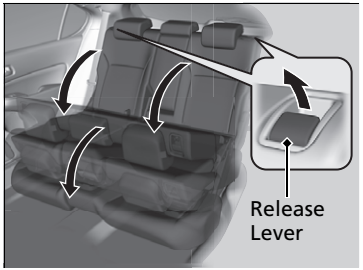
If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Rear Seats

■ Folding Down the Rear Seats

The rear seats can be folded down separately to allow for additional storage space.





■ To fold down the seat

1. Store the centre seat belt first. Insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchorage buckle.
2. Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.
   ➡ **Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage** P. 43
3. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.
4. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat-back.

To return the seat to the original position, pull up the seat-back in the upright position.

Folding Down the Rear Seats

⚠WARNING

Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending to the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

Remove any items from the rear seat cushion and floor before you fold down the rear seat.

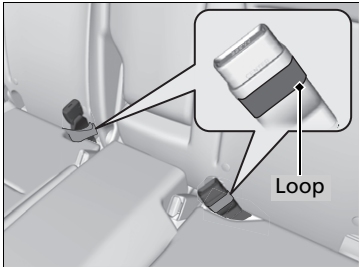
To lock the seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.

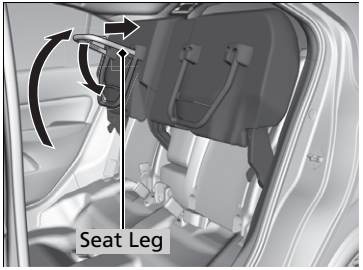
Make sure the seat-back, head restraints, and seat cushion are securely latched back into place before driving. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back, and the centre shoulder belt is re-positioned in the holding slot.

The front seats must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the rear seats as they fold down.

Continued

■ Folding the Rear Seat Up





Separately lift up the left and right halves of the rear seat cushions to make room for luggage area.

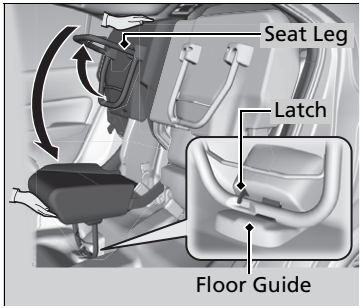
■ Lifting up the seat cushion

1. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.
2. Make sure the seat belt buckles are in their loops on the seat.
3. Pull up the rear seat cushion.
4. Fold the seat leg.
5. Push the seat cushion firmly against the seat-back to lock it.

Folding the Rear Seat Up

After you fold the seat up, or put it back in the original position, make sure the seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back.

Check if there are any items on the seat before you pull the seat cushion up. Check if there are any obstacles around the floor guide before you put the seat-back in the original position.



■ **Putting the seat in the original position**

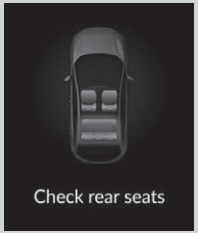
1. Hold the seat cushion in place with one hand, then unlock it by pulling up the seat leg fully with your other hand.
▶ Hold the seat cushion firmly, as it may abruptly fall when you unlock it.

2. Slowly lower the seat cushion, and set the seat leg in the floor guide until it latches in place.

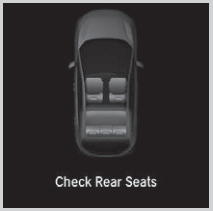
Rear Seat Reminder

This feature alerts you to the possible presence of passengers or items in the rear seats before you exit the vehicle. It activates when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF if the rear doors were opened shortly before or after the power mode was set to ON.

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



A reminder appears on the driver information interface and an alert will sound when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

Rear Seat Reminder

When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF, the reminder comes on briefly, then the function is deactivated.

The reminder will not work if the power mode has not been set to ON within 10 minutes of operating the rear doors.

The system does not detect passengers in the rear seats. Instead, it can detect when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seats.

You can turn off the notification setting.

Settings P. 110, 133

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright well back in their seats with their feet on the floor until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

⚠WARNING

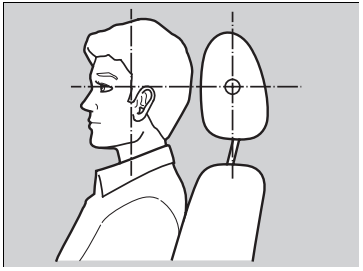
Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

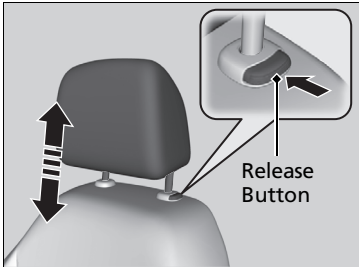
Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.



To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.
To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions

⚠WARNING

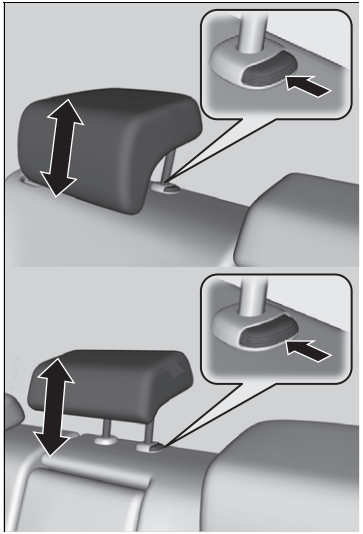
Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

Changing the Rear Head Restraint Positions



A passenger sitting in the rear seat should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.
To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

Changing the Rear Head Restraint Positions

When you use the head restraints in the rear seating positions, pull up the head restraints to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.



Continued

■ Removing and Reinstalling the Front and Rear Centre Head Restraints

Front and rear centre head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove the head restraint:
Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then, push the release button and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall the head restraint:
Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

Removing and Reinstalling the Front and Rear Centre Head Restraints

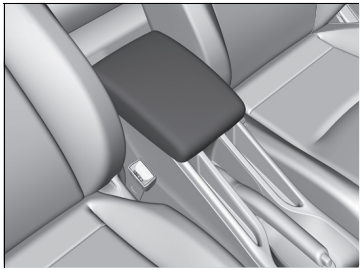
⚠WARNING

Failure to reinstall or correctly reinstall the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

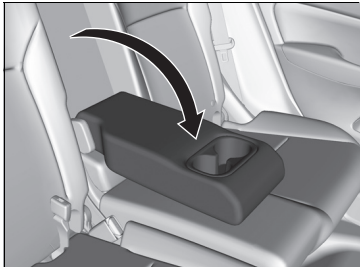
Armrest

■ Using the Front Seat Armrest*



The console lid can be used as an armrest.

■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest*

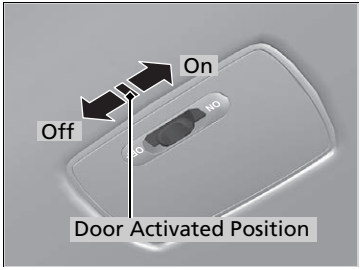


Pull down the armrest in the centre backrest.

* Not available on all models

Interior Lights

■ Interior Light Switches



■ ON

The interior light comes on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

■ Door activated

The interior light comes on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- When the driver's door is unlocked.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

■ OFF

The interior light remains off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior light fades out and turns off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.
The light turns off after 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.
➡ **Settings** P. 110, 133

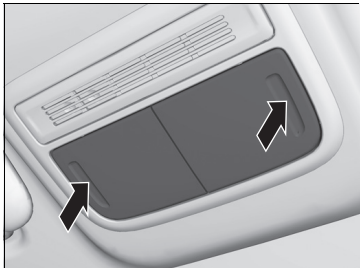
The interior light turns off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF mode, the interior light turns off after about 15 minutes.

To avoid draining the battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the engine is off.

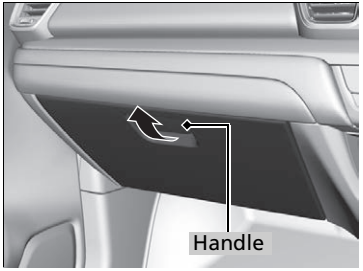
■ Map Light Switches



The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses.

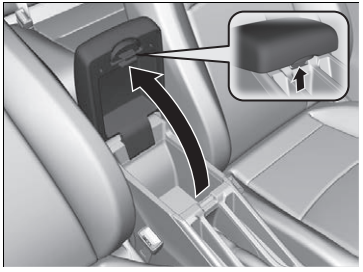
Storage Items

■ Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

■ Console Compartment*



Pull the handle to open the console compartment.

Glove Box

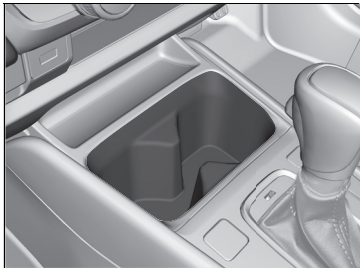
⚠WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

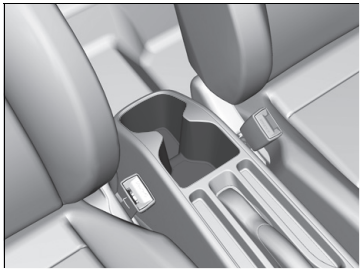
Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

* Not available on all models

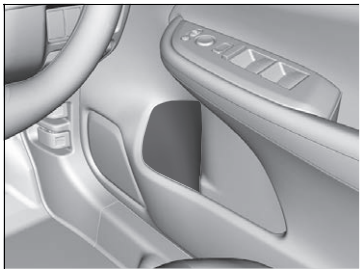
■ Beverage Holders



■ Front seat beverage holders



■ Front seat beverage holders (four beverage holders type)*



■ Front door side beverage holders

Located on both front door side pockets.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Beverage Holders

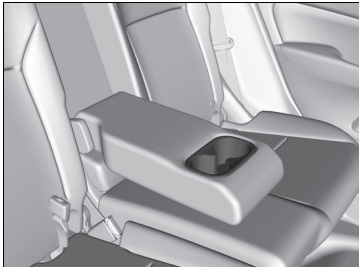
NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.



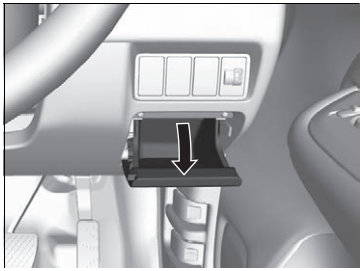
■ **Rear door side beverage holders**
Located on both rear door side pockets.



■ **Rear seat beverage holders***
Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

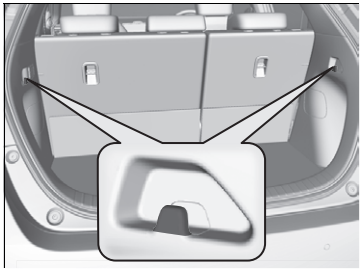
 * Not available on all models

Driver's Side Pocket



Pull the lid to open the pocket.

Luggage Hooks



The luggage hooks in the luggage area can be used to hang a light items.

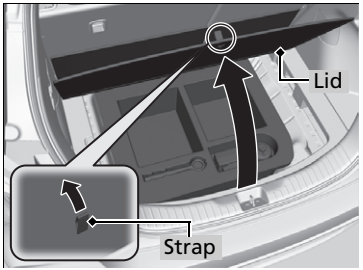
Luggage Hooks

NOTICE

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 3 kg on the side luggage hooks. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hooks.

Continued

■ Luggage Floor Box

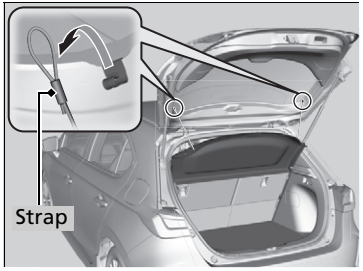


Pull the strap and open the lid.

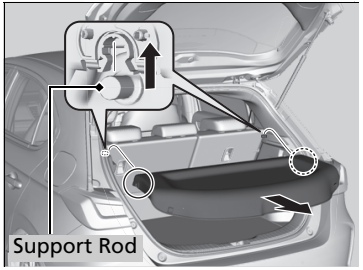
■ Luggage Area Cover*

The luggage area cover can be removed to give you more luggage room.

■ To remove the luggage area cover



1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the strap on each side of the tailgate.



3. Disengage the support rods, then remove the luggage area cover.

Reverse this procedure to install the luggage area cover.

After reinstalling the luggage area cover, make sure it is latched securely.

Luggage Area Cover*

Do not place items on the luggage area cover, or stack objects higher than the top of the back seat. They could block your view and be thrown around the vehicle during a crush or sudden stop.

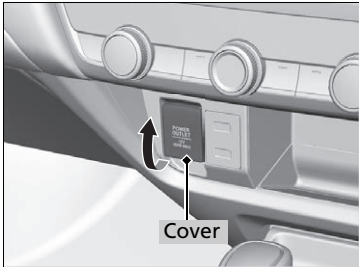
Do not apply excessive pressure to the cover, such as leaning on it to retrieve an item.

* Not available on all models

Other Interior Convenience Items

■ Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power socket can be used when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON.



■ Accessory power socket on the console panel

Open the cover to use it.

Accessory Power Socket

NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the accessory power socket.

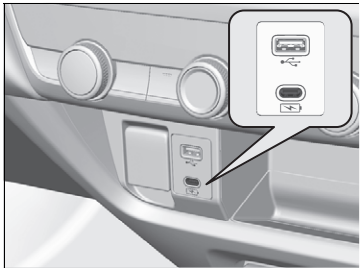
The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

To prevent battery drain, only use the accessory power socket with the engine running.

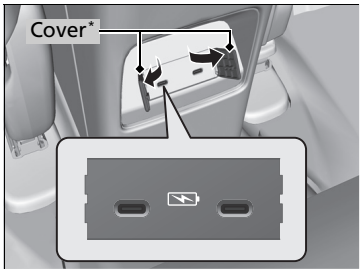
When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the accessory power socket.

■ USB Ports for Charging*

Install the USB connector to the USB port (3.0A) for charging the device.
The USB port with ⚡ symbol is for battery charge only.



■ On the front panel



■ Rear of the console compartment

USB Ports for Charging*

- Do not leave the device to charge in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend using an extension cable with the USB port.
- Do not connect the device to charge using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.

The USB port can supply up to 3.0A of power. It does not output 3.0A unless the device requests.
For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.
Set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON first.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.

If the USB charger becomes too hot, charging may be suspended.

Do not insert foreign object into charging device.

Do not spill liquid (i.e. water, drinks, etc) on the device.

* Not available on all models

Using Vents and A/C

Dashboard vents

Floor vents

Dashboard and floor vents

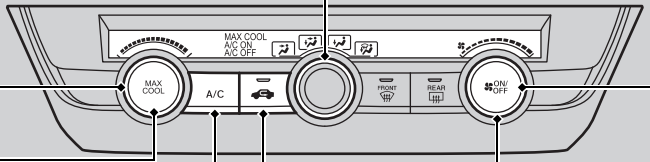
Floor and demister vents

Mode Control Dial
Change airflow.

Temperature Control Dial
Adjusts the interior temperature.

MAX COOL Button
Press to cool down the interior rapidly.

A/C (Air Conditioning) Button
Press to cool the interior or dehumidify.



ON/OFF (ON/OFF) Button
Press to switch the system between on and off.

Fan Control Dial
Adjusts the fan speed.

(Recirculation) Button
Press the button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation mode (indicator on):
Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off):
Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

 * Not available on all models

■ Cooling

1. Adjust the fan speed using the fan control dial.
2. Select  .
3. Adjust the temperature using the temperature control dial.
4. Press the **A/C** button (**A/C ON** is appeared).
5. Press the  button (the indicator off).

■ To rapidly cool down the interior

Press the **MAX COOL** button (**MAX COOL** is appeared).

Using Vents and A/C

During idle-stops, air-conditioning is suspended, and only the blower remains active.
If you do not want air-conditioning suspended, press the Auto Idle Stop system OFF button to cancel idle-stop.

Cooling

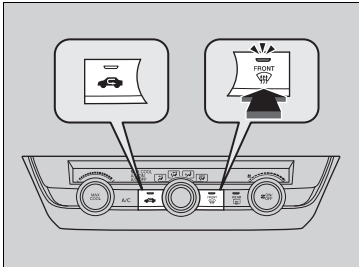
While ECON mode is active, the system may have reduced cooling performance.

To rapidly cool down the interior

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows.

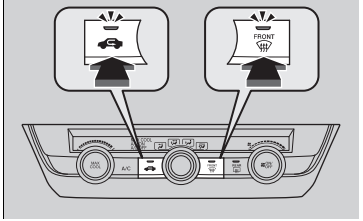
Continued

■ Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows



1. Set the fan to a high speed.
2. Press the FRONT button.
3. Press the button (indicator off).
4. Adjust the temperature until the airflow feels warm.
   ▶ If you want to rapidly defrost the window:
   Set the fan to the maximum speed and higher temperature, then press the button (indicator on).

■ To rapidly defrost the windows



Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the lower limit. When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

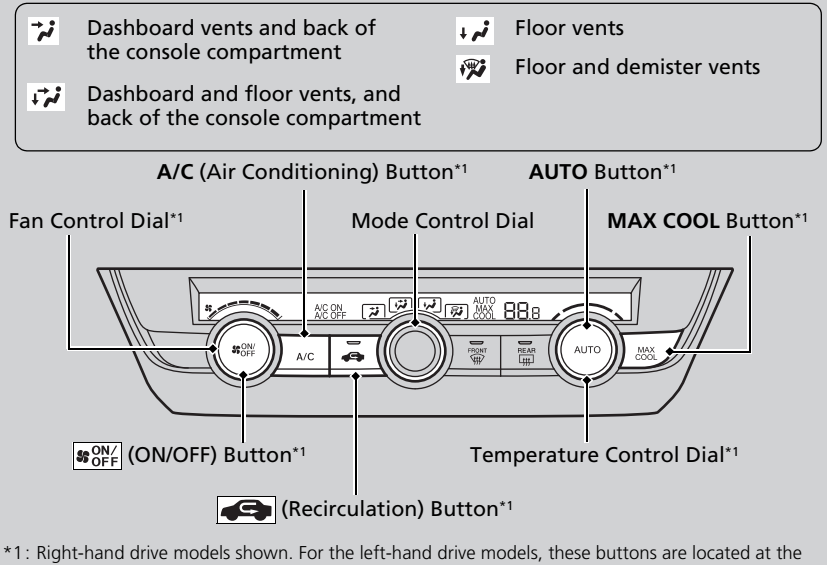
If you press the FRONT button during Auto Idle Stop, the engine restarts automatically.

To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated* or cooled air that raises* or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.



*1: Right-hand drive models shown. For the left-hand drive models, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive model.

Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.

2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.

3. Press the (ON/OFF) button to cancel.

Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.
The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, press the **MAX COOL** button.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper* limit, **Lo** or **Hi*** is displayed.

Pressing the (ON/OFF) button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the  (Recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.
Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.
Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

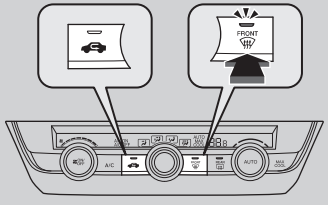
Using Automatic Climate Control

Left-hand drive type

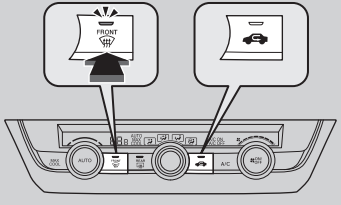
To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

■ Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

Right-hand drive type



Left-hand drive type



Press the FRONT button to turn the air conditioning system on.
Press the button (indicator off) to switch to the fresh air mode.

▶ If you want to rapidly defrost the window:
Press the button (indicator on).

Press the FRONT button again to turn it off and the system will return to the previous settings.

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

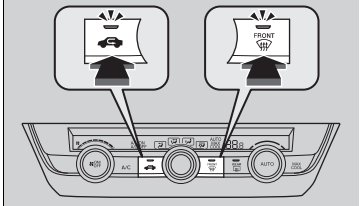
For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the lower limit. When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

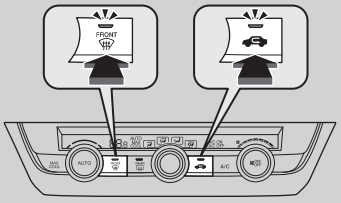
Continued

■ To rapidly defrost the windows

Right-hand drive type



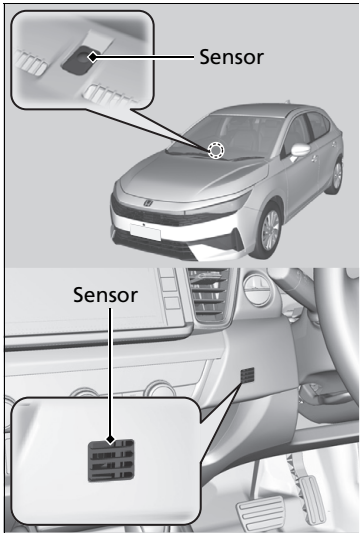
Left-hand drive type



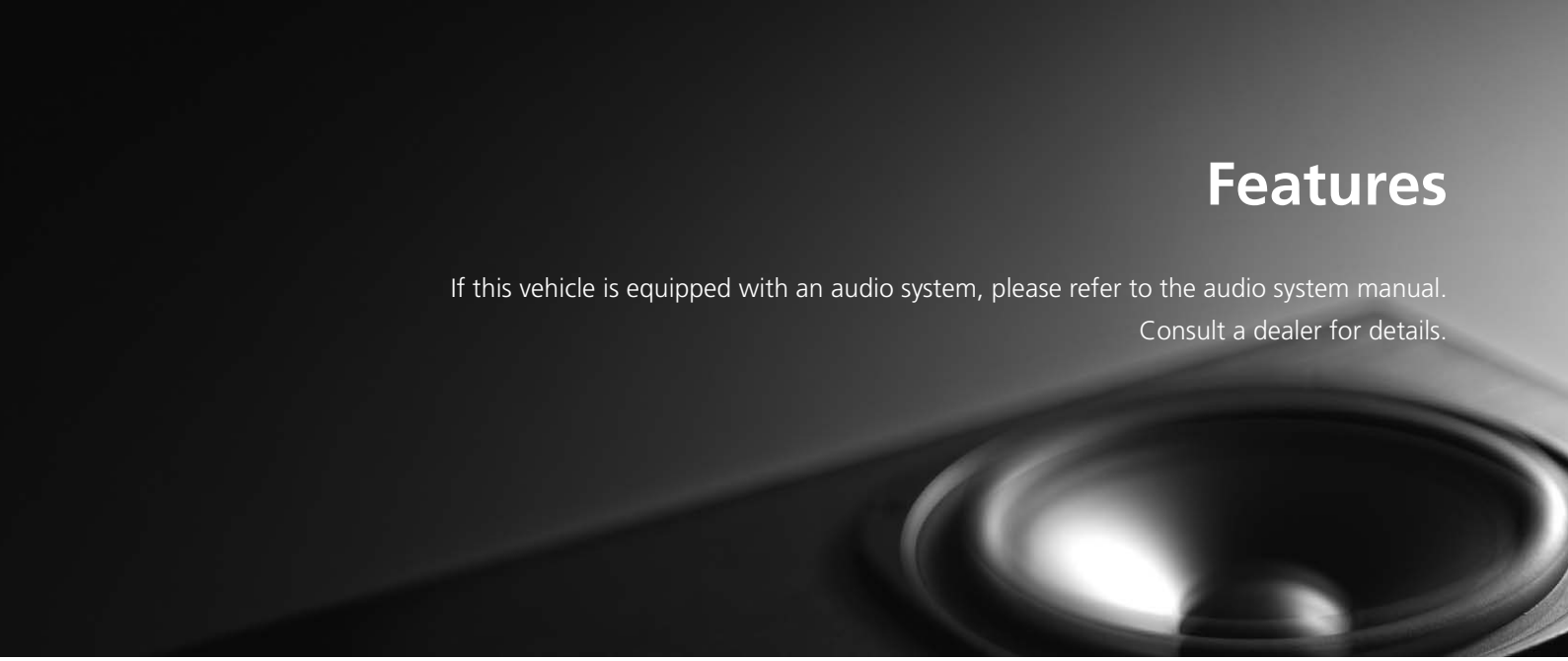
To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Automatic Climate Control Sensors

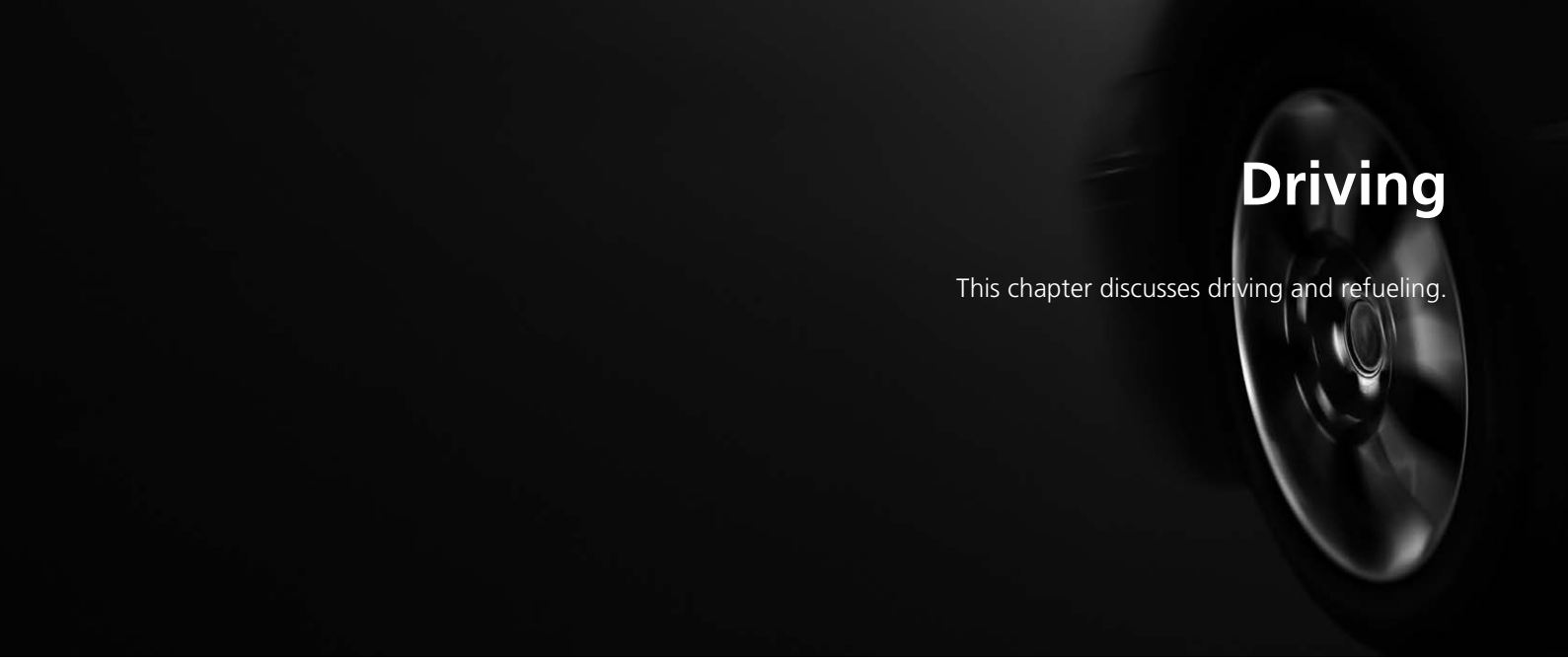


The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.



Features

If this vehicle is equipped with an audio system, please refer to the audio system manual.
Consult a dealer for details.



Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.

Before Driving
- Driving Preparation 218
- Load Limit 220

Towing a Trailer 221

When Driving
- Starting the Engine 222
- Precautions While Driving 228
- Continuously Variable Transmission 229
- Shifting 230
- ECON Mode 235
- Auto Idle Stop* 236
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 240
- Agile Handling Assist 242

Honda SENSING 243
- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) 246
- Road Departure Mitigation System 259
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 267
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 284
- Lead Car Departure Notification System 296
- Front Wide View Camera 302

Braking
- Brake System 304
- Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 306
- Brake Assist System 307
- Emergency Stop Signal 308

Parking Your Vehicle
- When Stopped 309
- Parking Sensor System* 311

Refueling
- Fuel Information 313
- How to Refuel 314

Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 315

Turbo Engine Vehicle* 316

* Not available on all models

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

■ Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving or fall off and impact other road users. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
  ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
  ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 358
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also, check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  ▶ Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
  ➡ **Load Limit** P. 220
- Do not pile items higher than the seatback height.
  ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the tailgate.
  ➡ **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 154
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
  ➡ **Seats** P. 184
  ➡ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions** P. 192
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
  ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
  ➡ **Mirrors** P. 181
  ➡ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 180

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Models with headlight adjuster

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by yourself.

➡ **Headlight Adjuster*** P. 170

* Not available on all models

Continued

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  ➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 41
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
  ➡ **Indicators** P. 84

Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

➡ **Specifications** P. 428

Load Limit

⚠WARNING

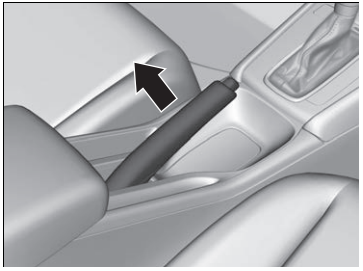
Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

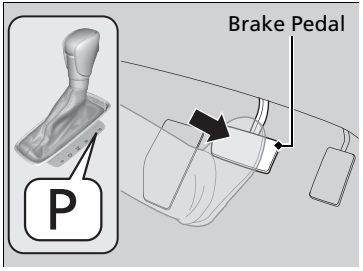
Towing a Trailer

Your vehicle is not designed to, and cannot safely, tow a trailer nor have a tow hitch installed. Do not install a tow hitch on, or tow with, your vehicle.

Starting the Engine



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.



2. Check that the transmission is in P, then depress the brake pedal.

▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in N, it is safer to start it in P.

Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

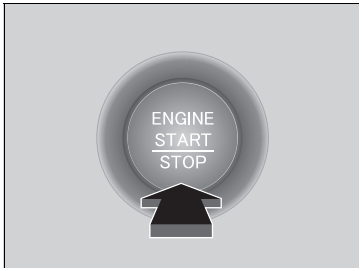
When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, cooling system*/climate control system*, and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

Bring the keyless remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 396

* Not available on all models



3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

Starting the Engine

The engine may not start if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.
If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before starting the engine again.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.
➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 159

Thai models
When you start the engine, you may feel the brake pedal slightly sink down. This is normal.

Continued

■ Remote Engine Start*

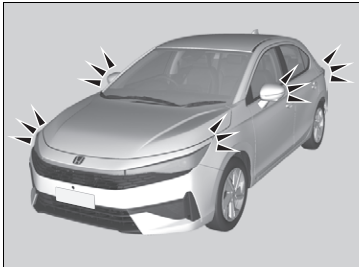
You can remotely start the engine using the keyless remote.

■ To start the engine



Press the [🔒] button, then press and hold the [HOLD] button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash once.



If the engine starts successfully, some exterior lights flash six times.

Remote Engine Start*

⚠WARNING

Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing carbon monoxide can kill you or cause unconsciousness.

Never use the remote engine starter when the vehicle is parked in a garage or other area with limited ventilation.

The remote engine start may violate local laws. Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws.

If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the keyless remote, the range will be reduced.
This distance may vary by external electrical interference.

 * Not available on all models



If the engine does not start, exterior lights will not flash.

▶ Go within the range, and try again.

When started remotely, the engine automatically shuts off after 10 minutes of idling and/or the brake pedal and **ENGINE START/STOP** button have not been pressed simultaneously.

To extend the run time for another 10 minutes during the first run, press the [🔒] button, then press and hold the [HOLD] button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash six times if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

Remote Engine Start*

The engine may not start by the remote engine start if:

- You have disabled a remote engine start setting.
  Settings P. 110, 133
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF.
- The transmission is in a position other than [P].
- The bonnet is open, or any door or the tailgate is unlocked.
- You have already used the keyless remote twice to start the engine.
- Another registered keyless remote is in the vehicle.
- There is any antenna failure.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The telematics unit malfunctions*.
- The security system alarm is not set.

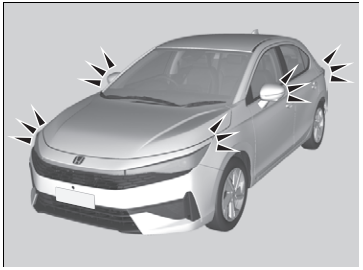
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ To stop the engine



Press and hold the HOLD button for one second.



If the engine stops successfully, the exterior lights flash once.



When the keyless remote is out of the keyless access system range, the exterior lights will not flash. The engine will not stop.

▶ Go within the range, and try again.

Remote Engine Start*

The engine may stop while it is running if:

- You do not start the vehicle within 10 minutes of starting the engine with the keyless remote.
- The engine is stopped by using the keyless remote.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The bonnet is open, or any door, or the tailgate is unlocked.
- You press the shift lever release button.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The battery is low.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The malfunction indicator lamp comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.

While the engine is running, the vehicle will automatically precondition inside the vehicle.

When it is warm outside:

- The cooling system*/climate control system* is activated in recirculation mode.

When it is cold outside:

- The demister is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear demister is activated.

* Not available on all models

■ Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the keyless remote*

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal, then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

When the engine was started in any case

2. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, release the parking brake. Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) has gone off.

➡ **Parking Brake** P. 304

3. Put the shift lever in [D]. Select [R] when reversing.

4. Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.

■ Hill Start Assist System

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Put the transmission into [D] or [S] when facing uphill, or [R] when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

■ Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Depress the brake pedal and change the shift position to [P].

2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the keyless remote*

The engine stops when the transmission is taken out of [P] before the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is pressed. Follow step 1 when starting to drive.

Hill Start Assist System

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

* Not available on all models

Precautions While Driving

■ In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

■ In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

■ In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

Precautions While Driving

CAUTION: Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored. Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not select N while driving as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

Continuously Variable Transmission

■ Creeping

When the engine runs at higher idle speeds, the creeping force increases.
Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped or ensure that brake-hold is engaged.

■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower ratio, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

Precautions While Driving

During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km after purchasing your new vehicle or replacing the brake pads or rotors to allow for proper break-in.

In Rain

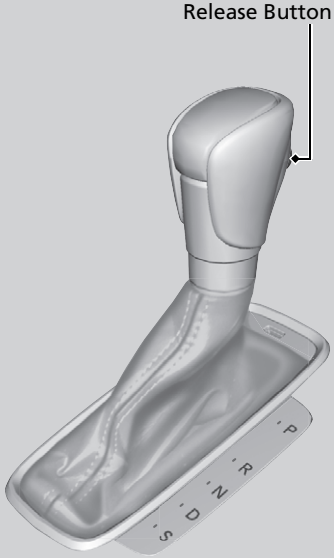
Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

Slowly decelerate when you shift down. If the road is slippery, sudden engine braking can cause the tyres to skid.

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



P Park
Used when parking or starting the engine.

R Reverse
Used when reversing.

N Neutral
Transmission is not locked.

D Drive
Used:
- For normal driving

Models with paddle shifters
- When temporarily driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode

S Drive (S)
Used:
- For better acceleration
- To increase engine braking
- When going up or down hills

Models with paddle shifters
- When driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode

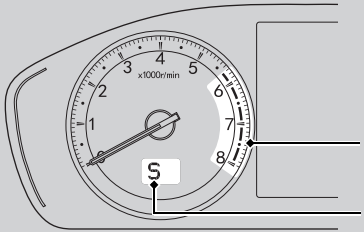
Shift lever positions

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF unless the shift lever is in P.

The vehicle may move very slightly even in N while the engine is cold.
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

Shift Lever Operation

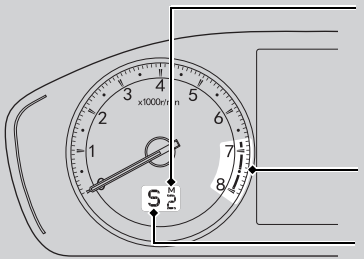
Thai models with A-type meter



Tachometer Red Zone

Shift Position Indicator/ Transmission System Indicator

Except Thai models with A-type meter



M (7-Speed Manual Shift Mode) Indicator/ Shift Indicator

Tachometer Red Zone

Shift Position Indicator/ Transmission System Indicator

Continued

Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from D to R and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.
Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

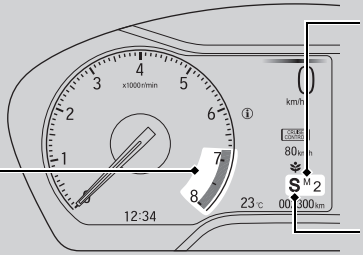
If the transmission system indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

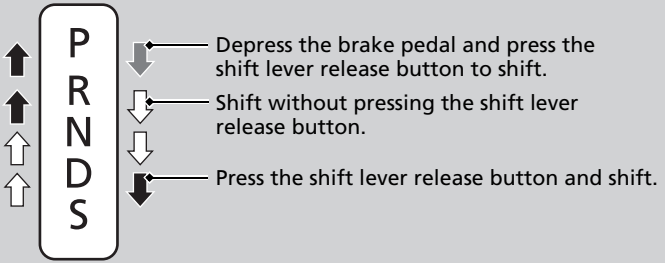
It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.
Depress the brake pedal first.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

Models with B-type meter



All models



Models with paddle shifters

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 7th speeds without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission switches to the 7-speed manual shift mode when you pull a paddle shifter while driving. This mode is useful when engine braking is needed.

■ When the shift lever is in [D]:
The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode temporarily, and the number is displayed in the shift indicator.
The 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled automatically if you drive at constant speed or accelerate, and the number in the shift indicator goes off.
You can cancel this mode by pulling the [+] paddle shifter for a few seconds.
The 7-speed manual shift mode is especially useful when reducing the vehicle speed temporarily before making a turn.

■ When the shift lever is in [S]:
The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode. The **M** indicator and the speed number are displayed in the shift indicator. As the vehicle speed slows down, the transmission automatically shifts down accordingly. When the vehicle comes to a stop, it automatically shifts down into 1st.

If the vehicle speed increases and the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission automatically shifts up.

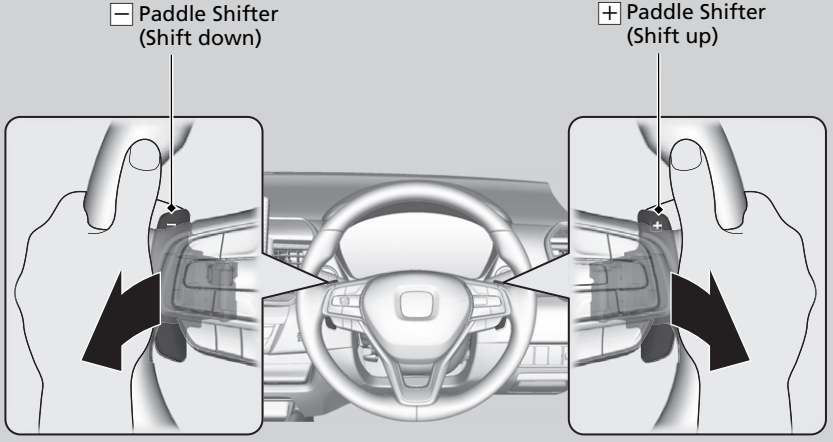
When cancelling the 7-speed manual shift mode, move the shift lever from [S] to [D]. When the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled, the **M** indicator and shift indicator will turn off.

You can only pull away in 1st speed.

Continued

Models with paddle shifters

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation



Downshifting when pulling the − paddle shifter
(Changes to lower speed number)

Upshifting when pulling the + paddle shifter
(Changes to higher speed number)

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

In the 7-speed manual shift mode, the transmission shifts up or down by operating either paddle shifter under the following conditions:
Shift Up: The engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher speed position.
Shift Down: The engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower speed position.

When the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission shifts up automatically.
When the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the selected speed position, the transmission shifts down automatically.

Operating the paddle shifters on slippery surfaces may cause the tyres to lock up. In this case, the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled and goes back to the normal D driving mode.

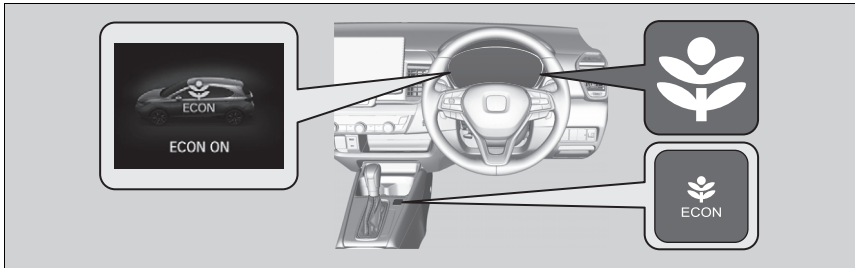
Each paddle shift operation makes a single speed change.
To change continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next speed.

The shift indicator blinks when you cannot shift up or down. It indicates that your vehicle speed is not in its allowable shifting range.
Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

ECON Mode

The ECON mode limits output to facilitate fuel-efficient driving.

▶ To turn the ECON mode ON and OFF, press the **ECON** button.



ECON Mode

While in ECON mode, the cooling system*/climate control system* will be less effective and the vehicle slower to accelerate.

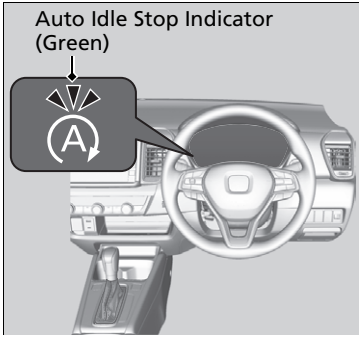
The mode may not be able to be changed under some driving conditions.

If there is a vehicle system failure, a message will also appear on the driver information interface, and you cannot change the mode.

* Not available on all models

Auto Idle Stop*

To help to maximise fuel economy, the engine automatically stops when the vehicle comes to a stop, depending on environmental and vehicle operating conditions. The indicator (green) comes on at this time.



The environmental and vehicle conditions that impact Auto Idle Stop system operation are varied.

➡ **Auto Idle Stop Activates When:** P. 238

The engine then restarts once the vehicle is about to move again, and the indicator (green) goes off.

➡ **The Engine Automatically Restarts When:** P. 239

If the driver's door is opened while the indicator (green) comes on, a buzzer sounds to notify you that the Auto Idle Stop function is in operation.

A message associated with Auto Idle Stop appears on the driver information interface.

Auto Idle Stop*

The 12-volt battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. Using a 12-volt battery other than this specified type may shorten the 12-volt battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the 12-volt battery, make sure to select the specified type. Ask a dealer for more details.

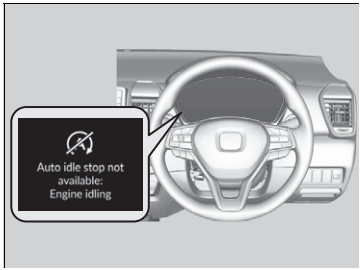
➡ **Specifications** P. 428

The duration of the Auto Idle Stop operation:

- Increases in the ECON mode, compared to when the ECON mode is off, with cooling system in use.

➡ **ECON Mode** P. 235

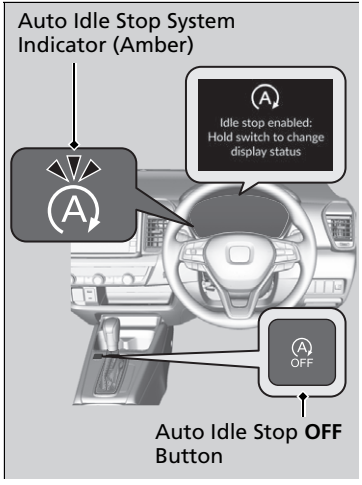
 * Not available on all models



A message appears on the driver information interface when the Auto Idle Stop system cannot be activated.

➡ **Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF** P. 237

■ Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF



To turn the Auto Idle Stop system off, press this button. The Auto Idle Stop system stops.

▶ Auto Idle Stop system will stop, the indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

The Auto Idle Stop system is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF

If you turn off the Auto Idle Stop system while it is activated, the engine will restart.

➡ **Auto Idle Stop Activates When:** P. 238

If you press and hold the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button, you can select whether to display the status messages or not.

Continued

■ Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

The vehicle stops with the shift lever in D and the brake pedal depressed.
When you shift into P quickly with depressing the brake pedal, the Auto Idle Stop continues to operate, even if the brake pedal is released.

▶ If you depress the brake pedal, the engine may automatically restarts.

■ Auto Idle Stop does not activate when:

- The Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button is pressed.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The engine is not adequately warmed up or coolant temperature is high.
- The transmission fluid temperature is low or high.
- The vehicle comes to a stop again before the vehicle speed reaches 5 km/h after the engine starts.
- The vehicle is stopped on a steep incline.
- The transmission is in a position other than D.
- The engine is started with the bonnet open.
  ▶ Turn off the engine. Close the bonnet before you restart the engine to activate Auto Idle Stop.
- The battery charge is low.
- The internal temperature of the battery is 5°C or less.
- The **MAX COOL** button is ON.
- FRONT is on with the fan operating.

■ Auto Idle Stop may not activate when:

- The vehicle is stopped by braking suddenly.
- The steering wheel is operated.
- The vehicle is repeatedly accelerated and decelerated at a low speed.

Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated. If the bonnet is opened, the engine will not restart automatically.
In this case, restart the engine with the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 222

Pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button causes the engine to no longer restart automatically. Follow the standard procedure to start the engine.

➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 222

■ The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

- The brake pedal is released.
- When the transmission is put into [P] from [D] or [N] on a slope.

■ The engine restarts even if the brake pedal is depressed when:

- The Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button is pressed.
- The steering wheel is operated.
- The transmission is put into [R] or [S], or when it is set from [N] to [D].
  ▶ If you put the transmission into [P] after the Auto Idle Stop activates, the Auto Idle Stop continues to operate. In this case, the engine restarts when you depress the brake pedal.
- The pressure on the brake pedal is reduced and the vehicle starts moving while stopped on an incline.
- The brake pedal is released slightly during a stop.
- The battery charge becomes low.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The driver's seat belt is unlatched.
- The **MAX COOL** button is ON.
- [FRONT] is on with the fan operating.

■ Starting Assist Brake Function

Briefly keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal to restart the engine. This can keep your vehicle from unexpectedly moving while on an incline.

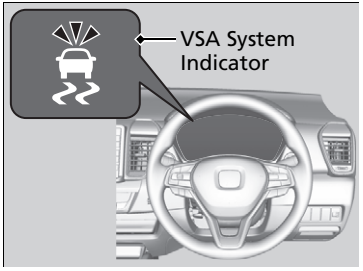
The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

If you are using an electronic device during Auto Idle Stop, the device may temporarily be turned off when the engine restarts.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

■ VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system. You will also see the indicator blink.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

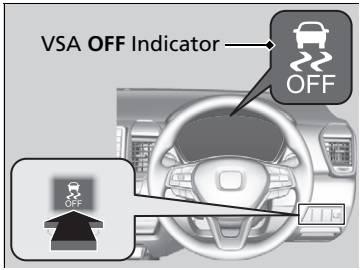
When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF**, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation, and safety support indicator may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

VSA On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the (VSA **OFF**) button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes as needed when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

Agile Handling Assist

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help to avoid or reduce the severity of collisions.

Honda SENSING has the following functions:

■ **The functions that do not require switch operations to activate**
- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 246
- Road Departure Mitigation System P. 259
- Lead Car Departure Notification System P. 296
- Auto High-Beam P. 171
- Parking Sensor System* P. 311

■ **The functions that require switch operations to activate**
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) P. 267
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 284

Honda SENSING

Make sure that all the tyres are of the same specified size, type, and brand, and that they are evenly worn. If you use tyres of different sizes, types, brands, or degree of wear, the system may not work properly.

Do not modify the suspension. Altering the height of the vehicle may prevent the system from working properly.

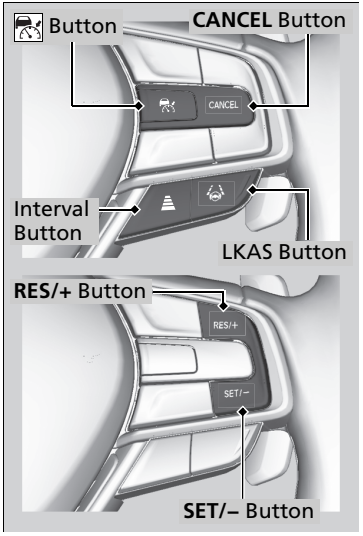
Thai models

CAUTION: This equipment should be operated keeping the radiator at least 20 cm or more away from person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).
This telecommunication equipment conforms to NTC technical requirement.
This telecommunication equipment has EMF radiation conforms to NTC EMF exposure standard.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)/ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)



■ Button

Press to activate standby mode for ACC.
Or press to cancel the system.

■ LKAS Button

Press to activate standby mode for LKAS.
Or press to cancel the system.

■ RES/+ and SET/– Buttons

Press **RES/+** button to set or resume the ACC or increase the vehicle speed.
Press **SET/–** button to set the ACC or decrease the vehicle speed.

■ Interval Button

Press to change the ACC following-interval.

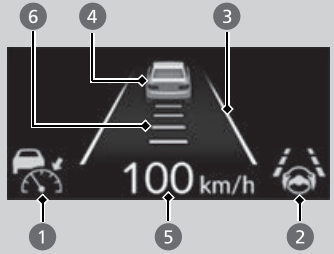
■ CANCEL Button

Press to cancel ACC.

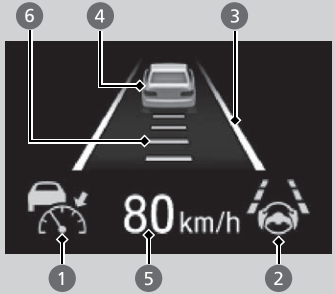
■ Gauge Content

You can see the current state of ACC and LKAS.

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



❶ Indicates that ACC is ready to be activated.
- Green: The system is on.
- White: The system is standby.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

❷ Indicates that LKAS is ready to be activated.
- Green: The system is operating.
- White: The system is standby.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

❸ Indicates that LKAS is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.
- Green lines: The system is operating.
- White lines: Traffic lane lines are detected.
- Amber line: Lane departure is detected.

❹ Indicates whether or not ACC detected the vehicle ahead.

❺ Indicates that ACC shows the set vehicle speed.
- White: Set Vehicle Speed
- Grey: Prior Set Speed

❻ Indicates that ACC shows the set vehicle interval.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collisions nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

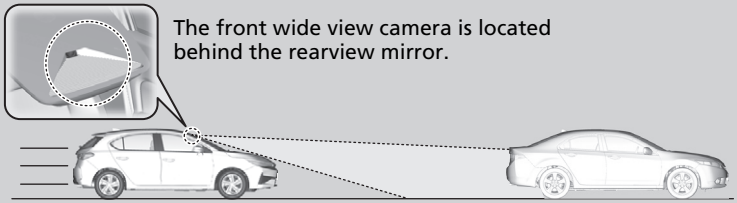
➔ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 251

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.

➔ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 302

■ How the system works

When to use



The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h or above and will search for a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle in front of you.

The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle drives at about 30 km/h or less and there is a chance of a frontal collision with a detected oncoming vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle when you turn left*1/right*2 at an intersection.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:
  - An oncoming or stationary vehicle detected in front of you.
  - A pedestrian or moving bicycle detected in front of you.
  - A vehicle approaching from the side in front of you.

The CMBS will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or the system determines there no longer is the potential for a collision.
The CMBS may also be cancelled when a driver operates the steering wheel and the brake or accelerator pedal to avoid a collision.

*1: Left-hand drive models
*2: Right-hand drive models

How the system works

The front wide view camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians.
However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.
Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

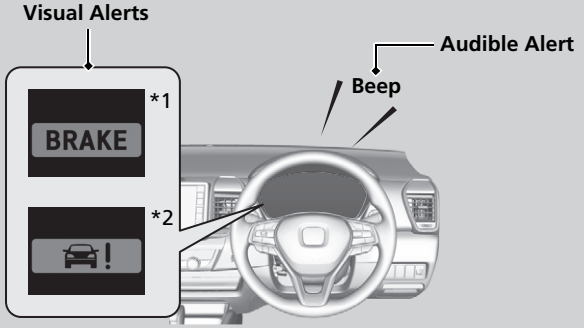
➡ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 251

Continued

■ When the system activates

The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)



You can change the distance (**Long/Normal/Short**[*1], **Far/Normal/Near**[*2]) between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on.

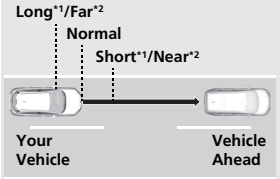
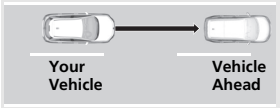
Settings P. 110, 133

When in **Long**[*1]/**Far**[*2], visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Short**[*1]/**Near**[*2], at a shorter distance than in **Normal**.

*1: Left-hand drive models
*2: Right-hand drive models

■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS		
		The sensors detect a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	The visual alert flashes. If the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you continues to decrease, the audible alert sounds in addition to the visual alert flashing. ▶ The collision warning distance can be changed. ➡ **Settings** P. 110, 133	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.		Forcefully applied

*1:Left-hand drive models
*2:Right-hand drive models

■ CMBS On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

Switching the Display P. 102, 123
Safety Support P. 108, 131

The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

You cannot turn the CMBS off while driving.

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the safety support indicator (amber) and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) indicator (amber) will come and stay on under certain conditions.

CMBS Conditions and Limitations P. 251

The CMBS is not activated for about 15 seconds after the engine starts.

When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF**, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation, and safety support indicator may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ CMBS Conditions and Limitations

In the following situations, the system may be unable to correctly detect vehicles, pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road conditions, potentially causing the CMBS to operate improperly.

➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 302

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the vehicles (including motorcycles), pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road surfaces.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, vehicles [including motorcycles], pedestrians, or moving bicycles may not be illuminated).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

CMBS Conditions and Limitations

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behaviour of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

Continued

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- Tyre chains* are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- The front wide view camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- Camera vision is blocked by drops of water from the window washer, or by the wiper blades.
- Operation of the vehicle is unstable due to a slippery road, etc.

 * Not available on all models

■ **Examples of limitations on the correct detection of the front wide view camera due to the condition of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicles, vehicles approaching from the side, pedestrians, or moving bicycles**

- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle suddenly cuts in front of or jumps out in front of you.
- A bicycle or sideways-facing vehicle is stopped.
- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you is sideways or facing diagonally.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising them.
- When several pedestrians are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When several bicycles are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When a pedestrian or moving bicycle crosses the road too quickly.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle approaches from the opposite direction.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you or oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- When part of a pedestrian (heads, limbs, etc.) is hidden by a carried object.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, when their hands are raised, or they are running.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre or taller than about 2 metres in height.
- When the pedestrian is pushing a stroller or bicycle.
- A vehicle is approaching diagonally from the side.

Continued

- A specially-shaped vehicle (such as a tank lorry or a lorry without a load) is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle approaching from the side is driving on a curve or hill.

■ Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation

- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you is a small motorcycle, motorcycle with a sidecar, wheelchair, three-wheeled vehicle, or other specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle is not in front of the vehicle.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle is significantly large.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle approaching from the side is significantly large.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) or moving bicycle in front of you slows suddenly.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- When you approach the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrians, or moving bicycles while accelerating rapidly or operating the steering wheel (except when turning left*1/right*2 at an intersection etc.)*3.

*1: Left-hand drive models
*2: Right-hand drive models
*3: When there is a possibility of a frontal collision with the oncoming vehicle while turning left*1/right*2, the CMBS is activated. However, it may not be activated if you suddenly turn the steering wheel.

- When the moving bicycle is a child-sized bicycle, folding bicycle, three-wheeler or other bicycle with small tyres, or a long bicycle like a tandem bicycle.
- When the front wide view camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle.
- When a vehicle (including motorcycles) that has an extremely high minimum ground clearance is ahead of you or approaching from the side.

■ Automatic shutoff

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the safety support indicator (amber) and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) indicator (amber) come and stay on when:

- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- The front wide view camera temperature gets too high.
- The front wide view camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (incorrect tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).

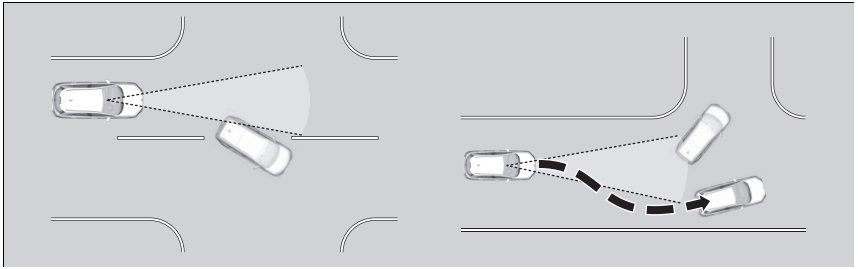
Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

Continued

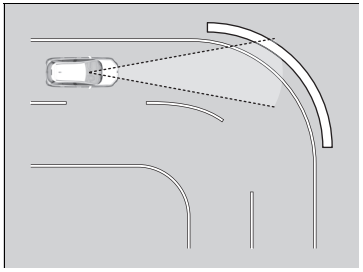
■ With Little Chance of a Collision

Even if there is little chance of a collision, the CMBS may activate under the following conditions.
Also, the system may activate if it detects a possibility of collision with pedestrians, moving bicycles, or vehicles.

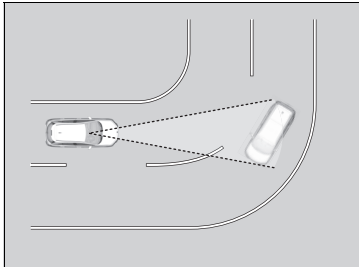
- Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.



- When your vehicle approaches vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles.
- When vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles are passing in front of you.
- When you drive under a low structure or through a narrow gate at high speed.
- When there are traffic signs or structures such as guard rails beside the road along a curve.



- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where the oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.



- When approaching stationary vehicles or walls, such as when parking.

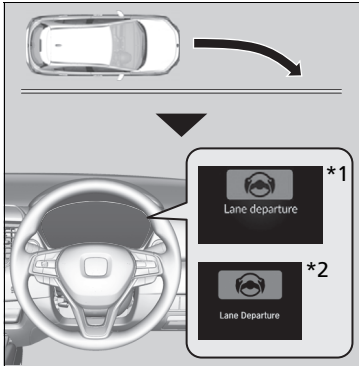
Continued

- A vehicle approaches from the side as it is driving through a curve.
- You pass by a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle that is turning left or right.
- You pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle that is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle turns left or right while approaching your vehicle from the side.
- You attempt to pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle is attempting to pass in front of your vehicle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you.
- When you are turning left or right, a crossing pedestrian enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you.
- You pass close by the side of a vehicle parked on the street.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

How the System Works



The front camera located behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

Settings P. 110, 133

As a visual alert, the **Lane departure**[*1]/**Lane Departure**[*2] message appears on the driver information interface.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

Road Departure Mitigation System

Important Safety Reminder
Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations.
Overreliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The Road Departure Mitigation system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The Road Departure Mitigation system is not activated for about 15 seconds after the engine has been started.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Wide View Camera P. 302

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

Road Departure Mitigation System Conditions and Limitations P. 264

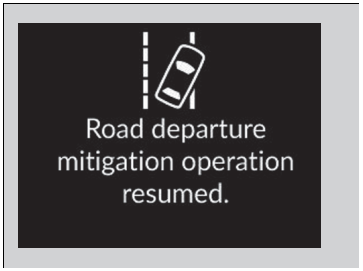
Continued

Models with A-type meter



If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the system will only alert you with the warning sound.





After a few minutes, the message to the left is displayed and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

*1: Left-hand drive models
*2: Right-hand drive models

Road Departure Mitigation System

There are times when you may not notice the Road Departure Mitigation system functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

You can change the settings for the Road Departure Mitigation system.
If LKAS is off, the message below may appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings.

Settings P. 110, 133

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator comes on, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the system will only alert you with the warning sound.

After a few minutes, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator goes off and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Models with B-type meter



Continued

How the System Activates

The system activates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The lane markings are white (yellow).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking, or steering.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.

How the System Activates

The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) and Road Departure Mitigation indicator (amber) come and stay on.

Indicators P. 84

The Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

■ Road Departure Mitigation System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

➡ **Switching the Display** P. 102, 123
➡ **Safety Support** P. 108, 131

The Road Departure Mitigation system is in the previously selected on or off setting each time you start the engine.

*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

Continued

Road Departure Mitigation System On and Off

When you have selected **Warning only**[*1]/**Warning Only**[*2], the system does not operate the steering wheel.

➡ **Settings** P. 110, 133

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF**, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation, and safety support indicator may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ Road Departure Mitigation System Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines, the road surface, or oncoming vehicles may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.

■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- Passing through a junction.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.

Continued

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- The suspension has been modified.

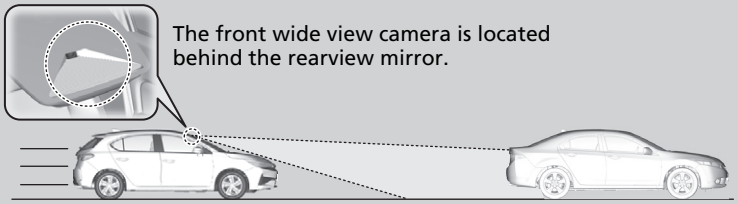
 * Not available on all models

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.

When to use



■ Vehicle speed for ACC: Desired speed in a range above roughly 30 km/h
■ Shift position for ACC: In D or S

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

⚠WARNING

Improper use of ACC can lead to a crash.

Use ACC only when driving on motorways and in good road and weather conditions.

⚠WARNING

ACC has limited braking capability. When your vehicle speed drops below 25 km/h, ACC will automatically cancel and no longer will apply your vehicle's brakes. Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal when conditions require.

Important Reminder

As with any system, there are limits to ACC. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

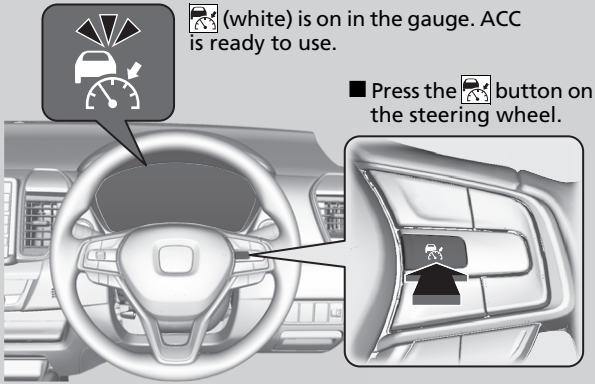
You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➔ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 302

Continued

■ How to activate the system

How to use



Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.
➡ **ACC Conditions and Limitations** P. 275

When not using ACC: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the button.

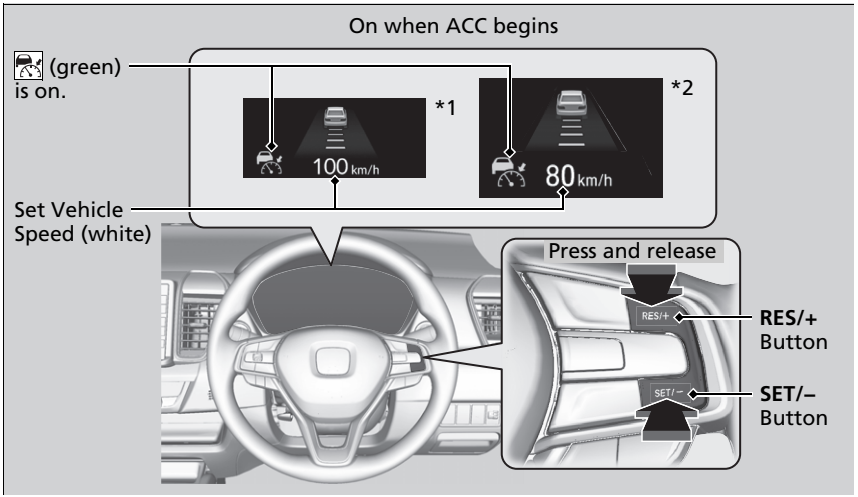
Do not use ACC under the following conditions:
- On roads with frequent lane change or continuous stop and go traffic, ACC cannot keep an appropriate distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.
- On roads with bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.), ACC may not detect the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you properly.
- On roads with slippery or icy surfaces. The wheels may spin out and your vehicle may lose the control on the condition.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF**, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation, and safety support indicator may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Continued

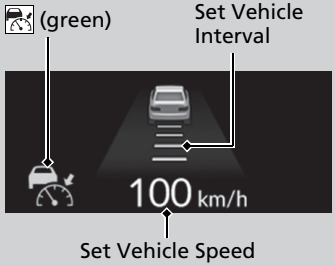
■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



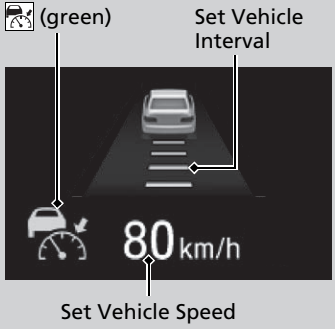
Take your foot off the pedal and press the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button when you reach the desired speed.
The moment you release the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC begins.

*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



When ACC starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the gauge.

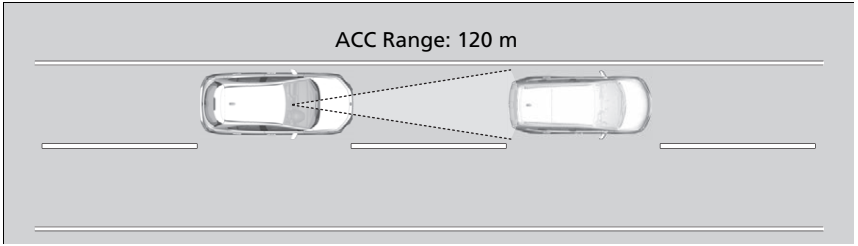
Continued

■ When in Operation

■ There is a vehicle ahead

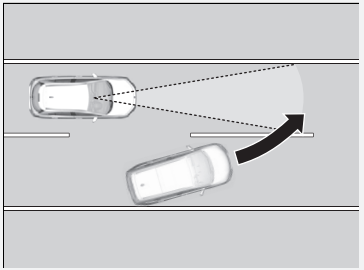
ACC monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

To Set or Change Following-interval P. 280

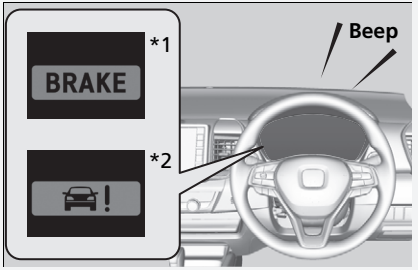


When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sound and a message appears on the driver information interface.

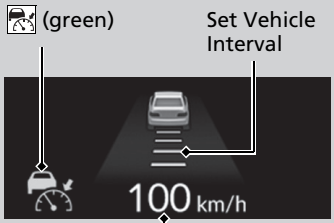


Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



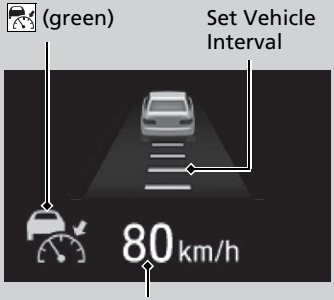
*1: Left-hand drive models
*2: Right-hand drive models

Models with A-type meter



A vehicle icon appears on the gauge

Models with B-type meter



A vehicle icon appears on the gauge

When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC detecting range.
A vehicle detect beep on and off can be selected.

Settings P. 110, 133

Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC. Additionally, ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.

ACC Conditions and Limitations P. 275

Continued

■ There is no vehicle ahead

Models with A-type meter



A vehicle icon with line contour appears on the gauge.

Models with B-type meter



A vehicle icon with line contour appears on the gauge

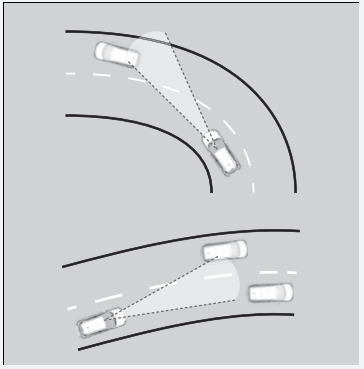
Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.
If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC range.
ACC stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes the set speed.

When in Operation

- ACC may temporarily control the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle in adjacent lane or surroundings of your vehicle depending on the road conditions (e.g., curves) or vehicle conditions (e.g., operating the steering wheel or the vehicle location in the lane).



- When the vehicle ahead of you moves away, such as when entering an interchange or rest area, ACC may continue to maintain the set following-interval for a short time.

■ ACC Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 302

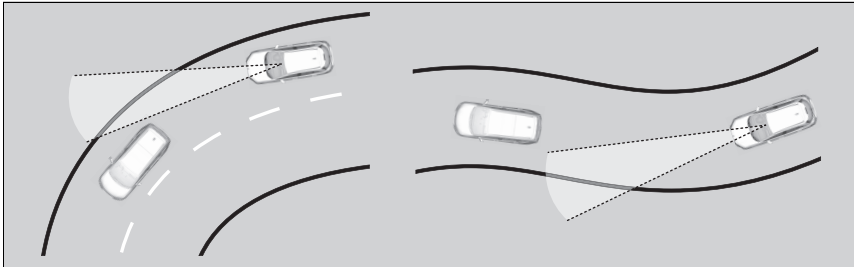
■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

Continued

■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.



- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Puddles or a film of water is on the road surface.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

* Not available on all models

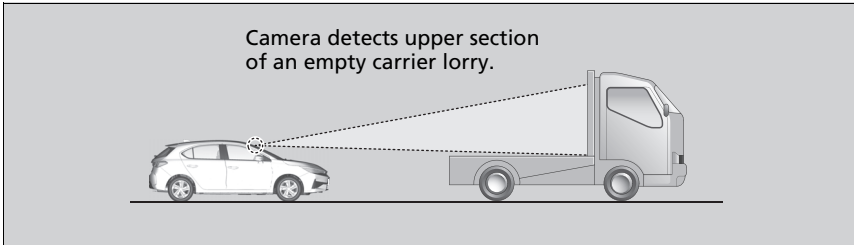
■ **Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you**

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- When the vehicle ahead of you blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- When the height of a vehicle ahead of you is low.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.

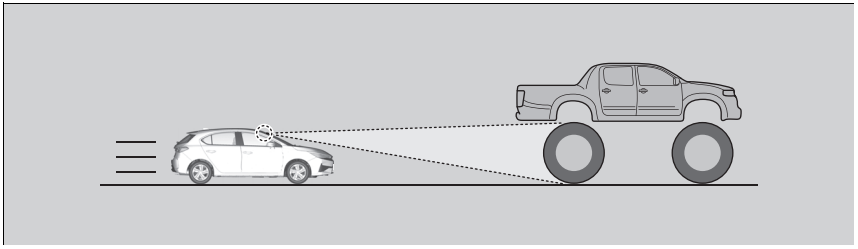
Continued

■ **Examples of conditions under which the system may not work properly**

- A vehicle ahead of you stops and the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is significantly large.
- When the vehicle ahead of you slows suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a three-wheeled vehicle or specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.



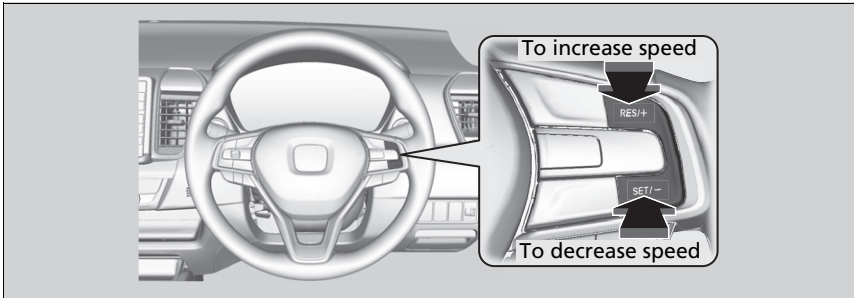
- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on the edge of the lane.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a narrow vehicle such as a motorcycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.



- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you press and hold the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.

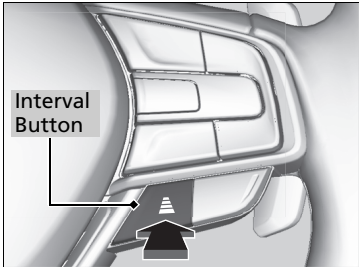
To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then push and release the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

Continued

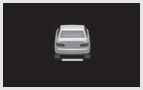
■ To Set or Change Following-interval



Press the interval button to change the ACC following-interval.
Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long, or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

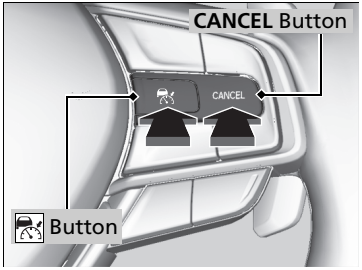
Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h	104 km/h
Short		26.6 metres 1.2 sec	33.7 metres 1.2 sec
Middle		34.6 metres 1.6 sec	44.9 metres 1.6 sec
Long		44.0 metres 2.0 sec	57.1 metres 2.0 sec
Extra Long		53.6 metres 2.4 sec	70.0 metres 2.4 sec

To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

Continued

■ To Cancel



To cancel ACC, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).
- Press the button.
  ▶ indicator (green) goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC, you can activate the ACC with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in grey) by pressing the **RES/+** button.
When you turn the ACC off by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed is displayed on the gauge in grey.
When pressing the **RES/+** button, the ACC is activated with displayed speed.
If the indicator (white) is displayed and you press the **RES/+** button, but no prior set speed (in grey) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC to automatically cancel:

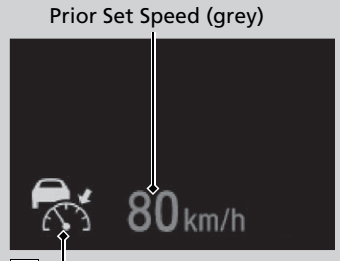
- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road for extended periods, or driving off road.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA, or CMBS is activated.
- When the VSA system indicator comes on.
- When vehicle speed is less than 25 km/h.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC range is too close to your vehicle.
- When accelerating rapidly.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- The vehicle is loaded heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- When passing through a dark place, such as tunnel.
- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.
- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).
- When the system doesn't detect any driving actions from the driver for a certain amount of time while the LKAS is also activated.

To Cancel

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC has been turned off using the button. Press the button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

If the vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h you cannot resume.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

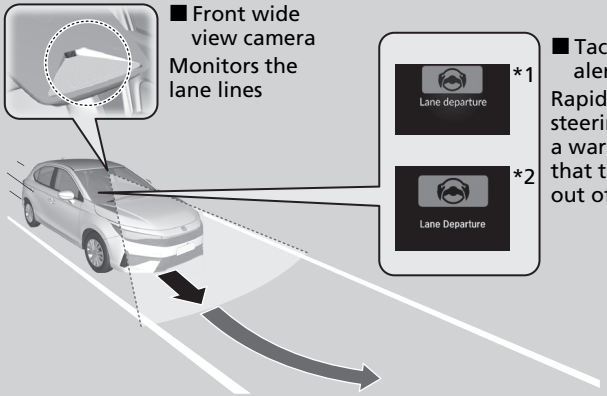
Front Wide View Camera P. 302

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

LKAS Conditions and Limitations P. 292

■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.



■ Front wide view camera

Monitors the lane lines

■ Tactile, audible and visual alerts

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, audible and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.

When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

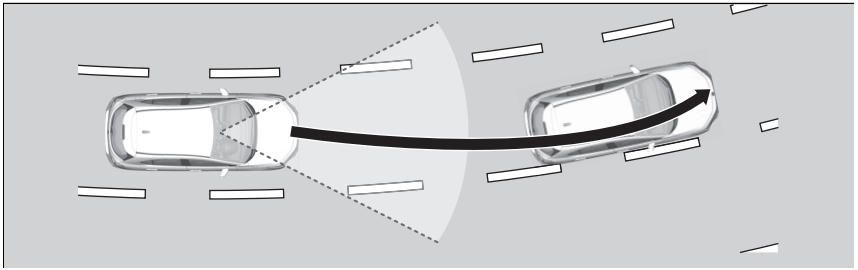
Continued

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

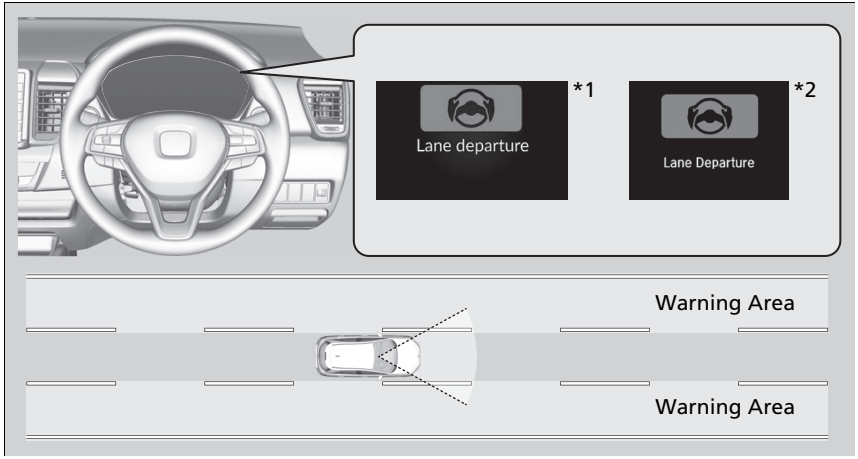
■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.



*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

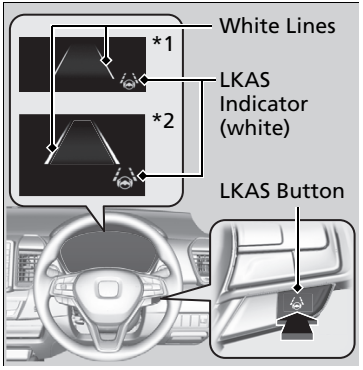
Continued

■ When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not suddenly depressed.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.

■ How to activate the system



1. Press the LKAS button.
▶ LKAS indicator (white) appears on the gauge.
The system is standby.
▶ If traffic lane lines are detected, white lines appear on the gauge.

*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

When the System can be Used

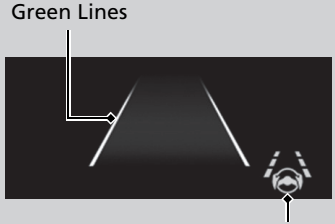
If the vehicle drifts towards either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Follow the points below to properly activate the system:

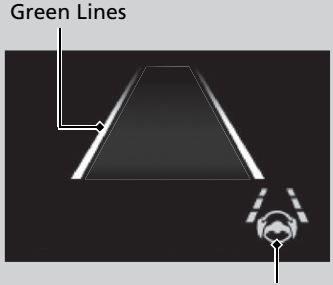
- Always keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not touch the camera lens.
- Do not attach a sticker to the area around the camera.

If LKAS button is pressed when the system can be used, LKAS is on without standby.

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter

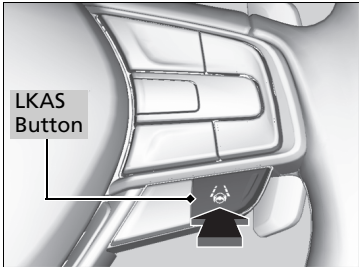


2. Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.

▶ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

Continued

■ To Cancel



Press the LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you stop the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

■ The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

When the LKAS is suspended under the following circumstances, green lines on the gauge change to white lines or disappear, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

Models with A-type meter

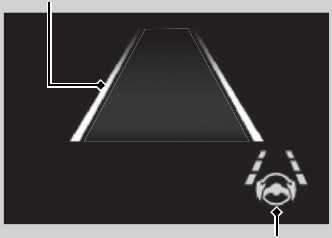
White Lines



LKAS Indicator (white)

Models with B-type meter

White Lines



LKAS Indicator (white)

- Decrease the vehicle speed to about 64 km/h or less.
  ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to about 72 km/h or more resumes the LKAS.
- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.
- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned quickly.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.
- The brake pedal is suddenly depressed.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 185 km/h.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

■ The LKAS may be automatically cancelled when:

In the following cases, traffic lane lines may disappear on the gauge, the beeper may sound, and the LKAS may be automatically cancelled:

- The camera temperature gets extremely high.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, is dirty.

Continued

The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

LKAS suspended beep on and off can be selected.
➡ **Settings** P. 110, 133

■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations

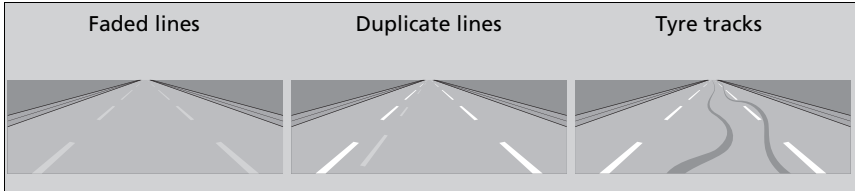
The system may not detect lane markings (in white or yellow), and LKAS may not function properly under certain conditions, including the following:

■ Environmental conditions

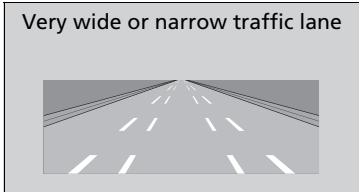
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.



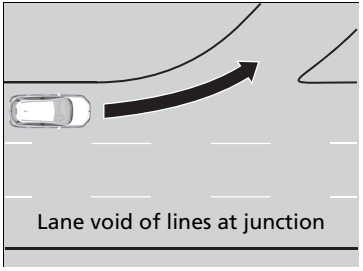
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.



- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

Continued

- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.



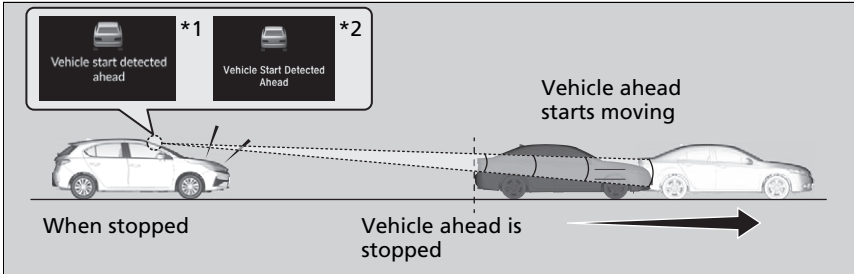
■ **Vehicle conditions**

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains* are installed.

* Not available on all models

Lead Car Departure Notification System

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.



*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

Lead Car Departure Notification System

⚠WARNING

Lead Car Departure Notification System is an supplemental system that provides driving assistance. It is not a system that informs you if it is safe to start driving.

Improper use of this system may lead to a collision.

Always visually confirm the safety of your surroundings before driving the vehicle and maintain a safe following-interval when driving.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Wide View Camera P. 302

Like other assistance systems, this system may not function properly depending on weather, environmental conditions, and so on.

■ How the system works

The system detects a stopped vehicle in front of you, on the condition that the vehicles are within 10 m of each other and both vehicles have been stopped for a period of time. When the detected vehicle moves but yours does not, the system will activate.

■ When the shift position is in D or S

The system will work when the brake pedal is depressed.

■ When the shift position is in N

The system will work when the vehicle is stopped, the brake pedal is depressed, or the parking brake is in operation.

You can choose from two system operation timing modes, **Normal** and **Early**.

➡ **Settings** P. 110, 133

In **Normal** mode, the system operates when the vehicle ahead of you has moved approximately 3 m from where it stopped.
In **Early** mode, the system operates as soon as movement has been detected.

Lead Car Departure Notification System

You can turn off the Lead Car Departure Notification System.

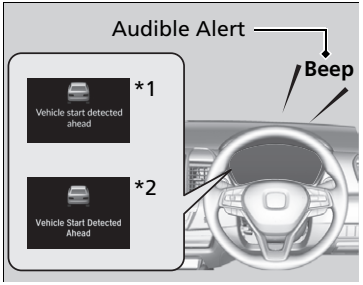
➡ **Settings** P. 110, 133

The Lead Car Departure Notification System will not activate while the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator is on.

➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)** P. 267

Continued

■ When the System Activates



The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when the system is activated.

*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

■ Lead Car Departure Notification System Conditions and Limitations

In the following conditions, the system may or may not activate regardless of whether the vehicle ahead of you starts to move.

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads or immediately after turning to the left or right.

Continued

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The vehicle is only stopped for a short time.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

■ **Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you**

- The vehicle ahead of you is only stopped for a short time.
- The space between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle ahead of you is moving too slowly.
- The vehicle ahead of you suddenly turns around or to the left or right.
- The vehicle ahead of you blends into the scenery and can't be detected.
- The vehicle ahead of you has only one or neither of their taillights on.

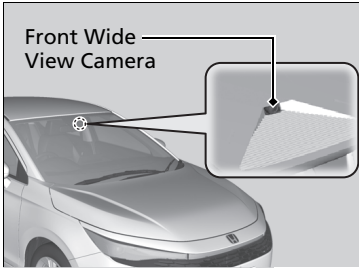
■ **Examples of other limitations on detection**
- There is a pedestrian, bicycle, motorcycle, or other specially-shaped vehicle in front of you.
- Another vehicle, pedestrian, or bicycle comes between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you is not directly in front of you.

■ **Examples of other limitations on system operation**
- The camera cannot correctly detect the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you has very high ground clearance.
- The vehicle ahead of you, such as a lorry without a trailer, has a rear that is smaller than the front.

Front Wide View Camera

The camera, used in systems such as Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation System, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Lead Car Departure Notification System, and auto high-beam system, is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

■ Camera Location and Handling Tips



This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun when parking. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

Front Wide View Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen, the bonnet, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally.
After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windscreen and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

Front Wide View Camera

If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Camera temperature too high**[*1]/**Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High**[*2] message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

Models with A-type meter

If the **Some driver assist system cannot operate: Clean front windshield or poor viewing condition**[*3]/**Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Clean front windscreen or poor viewing condition**[*4] message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windscreen is clean. Clean the windscreen if it is dirty. If the message does not disappear after driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Models with B-type meter

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windscreen Or Poor Viewing Condition** message appears:

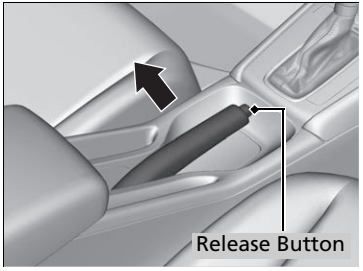
- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windscreen is clean. Clean the windscreen if it is dirty. If the message does not disappear after driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter
*3: Left-hand drive models
*4: Right-hand drive models

Brake System

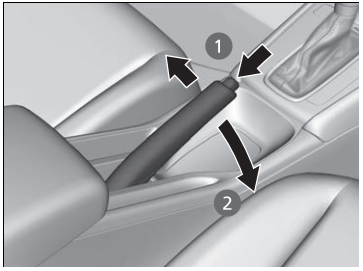
■ Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parking.



To apply:

Pull the lever fully up without pressing the release button.



To release:

1. Pull the lever slightly, and press and hold the release button.
2. Lower the lever down all the way, then release the button.

*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

Braking

Thai models

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a whirring sound from the engine compartment. This is because the brake system is in operation, and it is normal.

Parking Brake

NOTICE

Release the parking brake fully before driving. The rear brakes and axle can be damaged if you drive with the parking brake applied.

If you start driving without fully releasing the parking brake, a buzzer sounds as a warning, and **Release parking brake**[*1]/**Release Parking Brake**[*2] appears on the driver information interface.

Always apply the parking brake when parking.

Foot Brake

Malaysian models

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels.
A vacuum power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal.

Philippines and Laotian models

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at the front, and drum brakes in the rear wheels.
A vacuum power assist helps to reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal.

Thai models

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at the front, and drum brakes in the rear wheels.

All models

The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

Brake Assist System P. 307
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 306

Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower speed position.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

Thai models

Whenever the brakes are activated by CMBS or another system that automatically controls braking, the brake pedal is depressed and released in accordance with braking function.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you can.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:
- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the incorrect size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.
While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:
- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains*.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:
- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the engine has been started and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.
  These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

* Not available on all models

Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

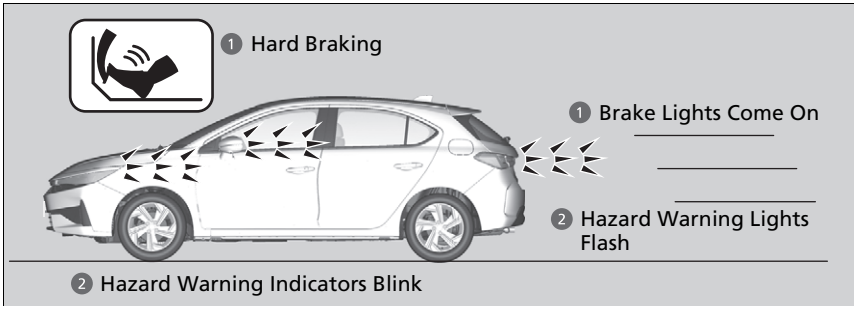
Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

■ **When the system activates:**



The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Change the shift position to P.
4. Turn off the engine.

Always set the parking brake, especially if you are parked on an incline.

Parking Your Vehicle

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber.
Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:
- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Change the shift position to P before the vehicle stops completely.

Continued

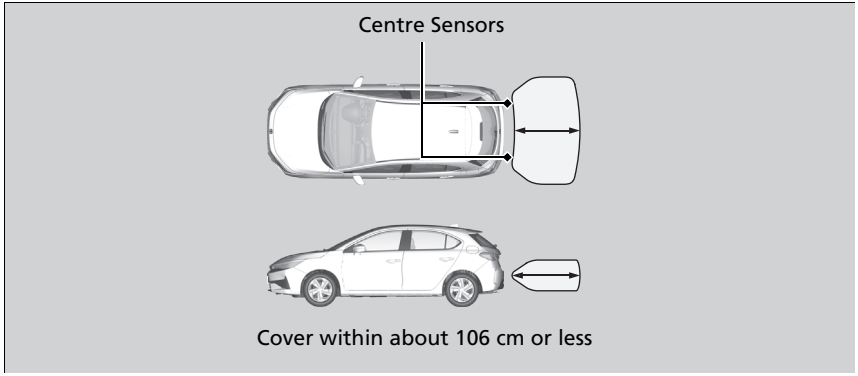
Parking Your Vehicle

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake. If parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Parking Sensor System*

The centre sensors monitor obstacles behind your vehicle, and the beeper and driver information interface lets you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

The Sensor Location and Range



The system activates when the transmission is in R, and the vehicle speed is less than 9 km/h.

Parking Sensor System*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:
- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- There is something nearby that emits ultrasonic waves or high frequency sounds.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

The system may not detect these obstacles:
- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

The system may falsely detect obstacles in the following situations:
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.
- There is splashing water near the sensors due to heavy rains, etc.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ When the Distance Between Your Vehicle and Obstacles Becomes Shorter

Interval between beeps	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle	Indicator	Driver information interface
	Centre Sensors		
Moderate	About 61-106 cm	Blinks in Yellow*1	 Indicators light up where the sensor detects an obstacle
Short	About 48-61 cm	Blinks in Amber	
Very short	About 38-48 cm		
Continuous	About 38 cm or less	Blinks in Red	

*1:At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

Fuel Information

■ Fuel recommendation

Thai models

Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher

Use of lower octane number petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.
Use of petrol with a research octane number less than 91 can lead to engine damage.

Except Thai models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane number petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

■ Fuel tank capacity: 40 L

Thai models

■ Engine cleaner

Fuel quality varies by region. Add genuine injector cleaner agent according to the time and distance instructions in the maintenance schedule.
Please use a genuine Honda injector cleaner agent. If not available, please use a PEA (polyetheramine) based cleaning agent instead.
Regular use of injector cleaner may be needed in countries or regions without a maintenance schedule. Consult your dealer for more information.

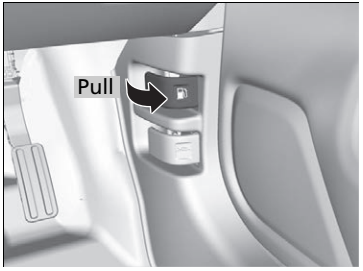
Fuel Information

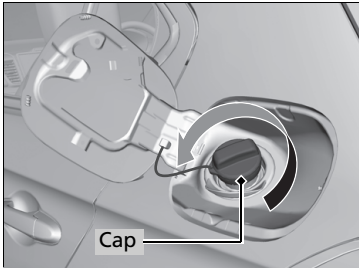
NOTICE

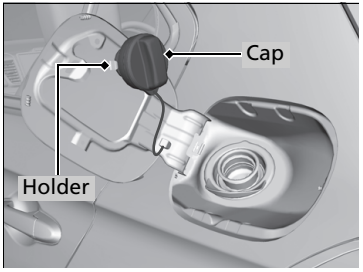
Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

How to Refuel







1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
▶ The fuel fill door opens.

4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.

5. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
6. Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.
▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
7. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

How to Refuel

⚠WARNING

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flames away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

⚠CAUTION

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity and cause fuel to spill.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO_2 emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult the service information provided for your vehicle.

Maintenance Schedule P. 326

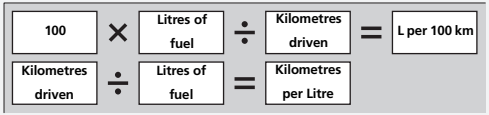
- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.

Recommended Engine Oil P. 336

- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.



Handling Precautions

The turbocharger is a high-precision device to obtain greater horsepower by delivering a large volume of compressed air into the engine using a turbine driven by the engine's exhaust gas pressure.

- When the engine is cold just after starting, avoid revving the engine or sudden acceleration.

- Always replace the engine oil and engine oil filter according to the Oil Monitor System. The turbine rotates at very high speeds over 100,000 rpm and its temperature reaches over 700°C. It is lubricated and cooled by engine oil. If you fail to replace the engine oil and filter at the scheduled distance or interval, deteriorated engine oil may cause failure such as sticking and abnormal noise of the turbine bearing.

Turbo Engine Vehicle*

The scheduled maintenance intervals for replacing the engine oil and filter is indicated on the driver information interface. Follow the information on replacement timing.

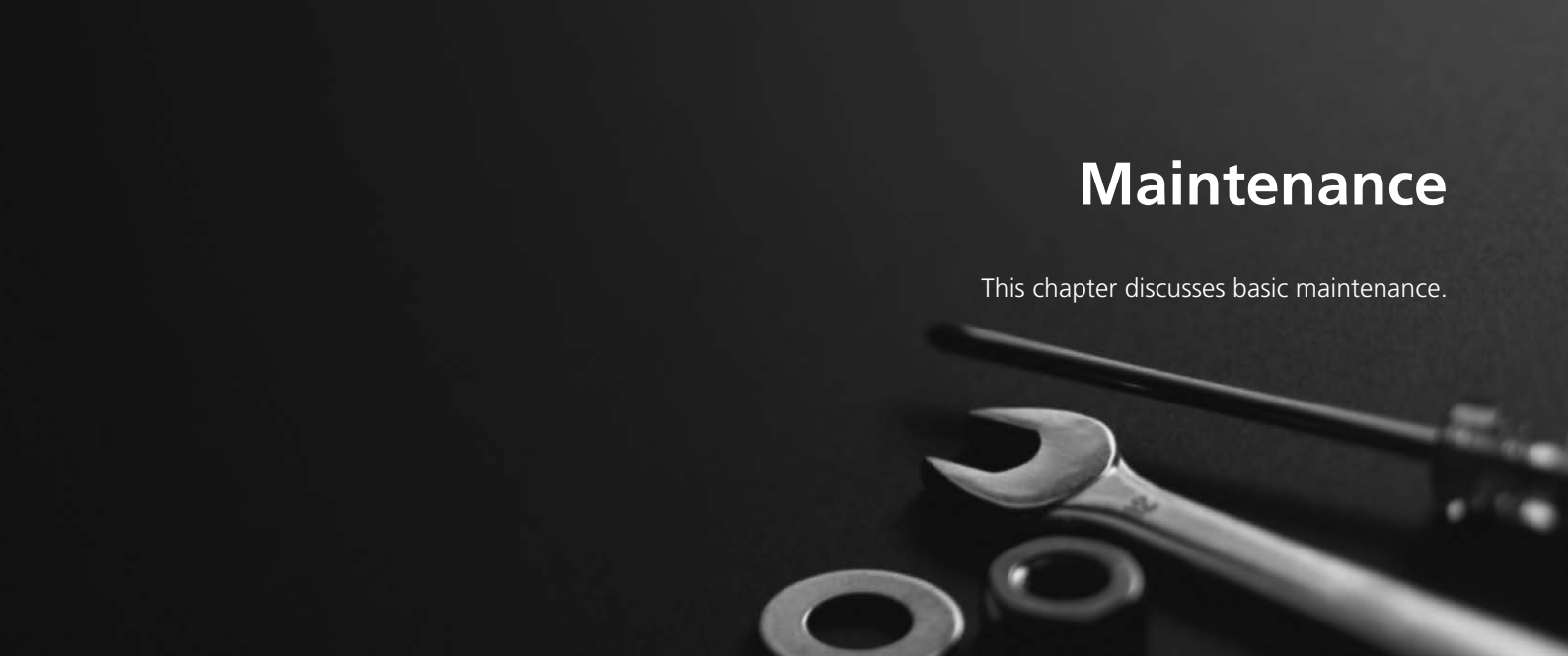
Oil Monitor System* P. 321
Recommended Engine Oil P. 336

The **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** or **Engine temperature near limit. Avoid strong acceleration and high speed.** message may appear on the driver information interface when you restart the engine after driving under high load conditions such as at high speed or in hilly terrain.
This is normal. The message goes off after you idle or drive the vehicle for about one minute.

 * Not available on all models

Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



Before Performing Maintenance
- Inspection and Maintenance 318
- Safety When Performing Maintenance 319
- Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service 320

Oil Monitor System* 321
Maintenance Schedule 326
Maintenance Under the Bonnet
- Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet .. 333
- Opening the Bonnet 335
- Recommended Engine Oil 336
- Oil Check 338
- Adding Engine Oil 340
- Engine Coolant 341
- Transmission Fluid 345
- Brake Fluid 345
- Refilling Window Washer Fluid 347
- Fuel Filter 347

Replacing Light Bulbs 348
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades 354
Checking and Maintaining Tyres
- Checking Tyres 358
- Wear Indicators 360
- Tyre Service Life 360
- Tyre and Wheel Replacement 361
- Tyre Rotation 362
- Snow Traction Devices 363

Battery 365
Remote Transmitter Care 368
Cooling System*/Climate Control System* Maintenance 370
Cleaning
- Interior Care 372
- Exterior Care 375

Accessories and Modifications 378

* Not available on all models

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➡ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 326

■ Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Routine inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  ➡ **Brake Fluid** P. 345
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 358
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  ➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 348
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 354

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

■ Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
  ▶ Heat from the surrounding parts can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  ▶ Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual.

⚠WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Continued

■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Make sure that the radiator fan is stopped before inspecting the engine compartment.
  ▶ Depending on the vehicle condition, the radiator fan may operate even when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  ▶ Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  ▶ Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

  Models with Auto Idle Stop

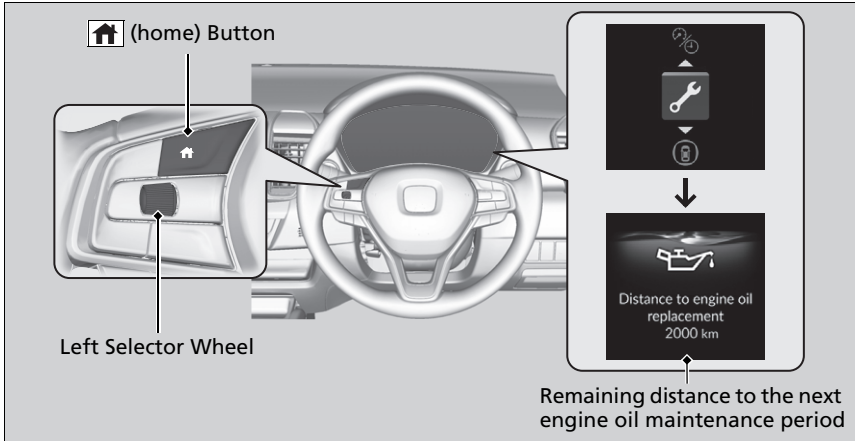
  ▶ Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda Genuine Parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda Genuine Parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

The warning message notifies you when to change the engine oil, or when to bring your vehicle to a dealer for indicated maintenance services.

Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information



1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the (home) button.
3. Roll the left selector wheel until is displayed.
4. Press the left selector wheel to go to the oil monitor system information screen. The engine oil life appears on the driver information interface.

The system message indicator ((i)) stays on in the instrument panel after the maintenance period reached. Have the indicated maintenance done by a dealer immediately.

Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Based on the engine operating and engine oil conditions, the remaining distance to the next maintenance period is calculated and displayed.

By driving conditions, actual travel distance might be shorter than the displayed distance.

Regardless of what the oil monitor system information indicates, perform maintenance regularly. Please refer to the maintenance schedule for more details.

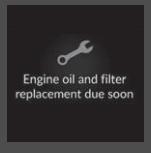
Maintenance Schedule P. 326

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Oil Monitor System Information on the Driver Information Interface

Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
Normal	 	When you reset the remaining distance after an oil change, a series of dots will appear in the oil life display. These dots will remain displayed until the system determines, based on the driving conditions, the remaining distance until the next oil change, or the next oil and filter change.
—	 	When you select the oil monitor system information screen, the remaining engine oil life, or the remaining engine oil and oil filter life is displayed.

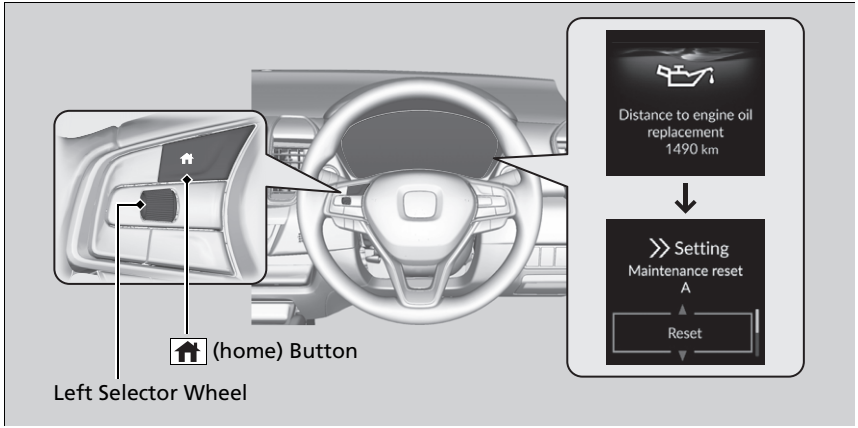
Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
Replacement Due Soon  	 	The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter are approaching the end of their life.
Replacement Due Now  	 	The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter have almost reached the end of their service life, and the maintenance service item(s) should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.

Continued

Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
Replacement Past Due  	 	The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter have passed their service life. The maintenance service item(s) must be inspected and serviced immediately.

■ Resetting the Display

Reset the engine oil monitor system information if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the (home) button.
3. Roll the left selector wheel until **Clock & vehicle settings** is displayed.
4. Roll the left selector wheel until **Maintenance reset** is displayed.
5. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Reset** (You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
6. Press the left selector wheel to reset the selected item.
▶ When the oil monitor system information display is reset, the engine oil life is reset to **----- km**.

Resetting the Display

NOTICE
Failure to reset the engine oil life after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The dealer will reset the engine oil life display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the engine oil life display yourself.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult the service information provided for your vehicle for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Except Thai models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil	Normal	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
	Severe	Every 5,000 km or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter	Normal	Every 20,000 km or 2 years									
	Severe	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km									
Inspect valve clearance*1		Every 120,000 km									

*1:Sensory Method: Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.		km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
		months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace spark plugs			Every 100,000 km									
Inspect drive belt				•		•		•		•		•
Replace engine coolant			At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years									
Replace transmission fluid				•		•		•		•		•
Replace dust and pollen filter			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect front and rear brakes			Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace fuel filter*1	Normal		Every 140,000 km									
	Severe		Every 90,000 km									
Replace brake fluid			Every 3 years									
Check parking brake adjustment			•	•		•		•		•		•
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)			Every 10,000 km									

*1:It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Visually inspect the following items:											
Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots Suspension components Driveshaft boots		Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA) All fluid levels and condition of fluid Exhaust system Fuel lines and connections		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and oil filter	A, B, C, D and E
Transmission fluid	B, D

Maintenance Schedule

The condition is considered as severe when you drive:
A. less than 8 km, or less than 16 km in freezing temperatures per trip.
B. In extremely hot temperature above 35°C.
C. With extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go.
D. With a loaded roof rack, or in mountains.
E. On muddy, dusty or de-iced roads.

Continued

Thai models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil		When indicator comes on or 1 year									
Replace engine oil filter		When indicator comes on or 2 years									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km									
Inspect valve clearance*1		Every 120,000 km									
Replace spark plugs		Every 100,000 km									
Replace timing belt						•					•
Inspect drive belt			•		•		•		•		•
Replace engine coolant		At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years									
Replace transmission fluid			•		•		•		•		•
Inspect front and rear brakes		Every 10,000 km or 1 year									

*1:Sensory Method: Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.		km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
		months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace brake fluid			Every 3 years									
Replace fuel filter	Normal		Every 140,000 km									
	Severe		Every 90,000 km*1									
Check parking brake adjustment			•	•		•		•		•		•
Replace dust and pollen filter			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)			Every 10,000 km									
Visually inspect the following items:												
Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots Suspension components Driveshaft boots			Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA) All fluid levels and condition of fluid Exhaust system Fuel lines and connections			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

*1:It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

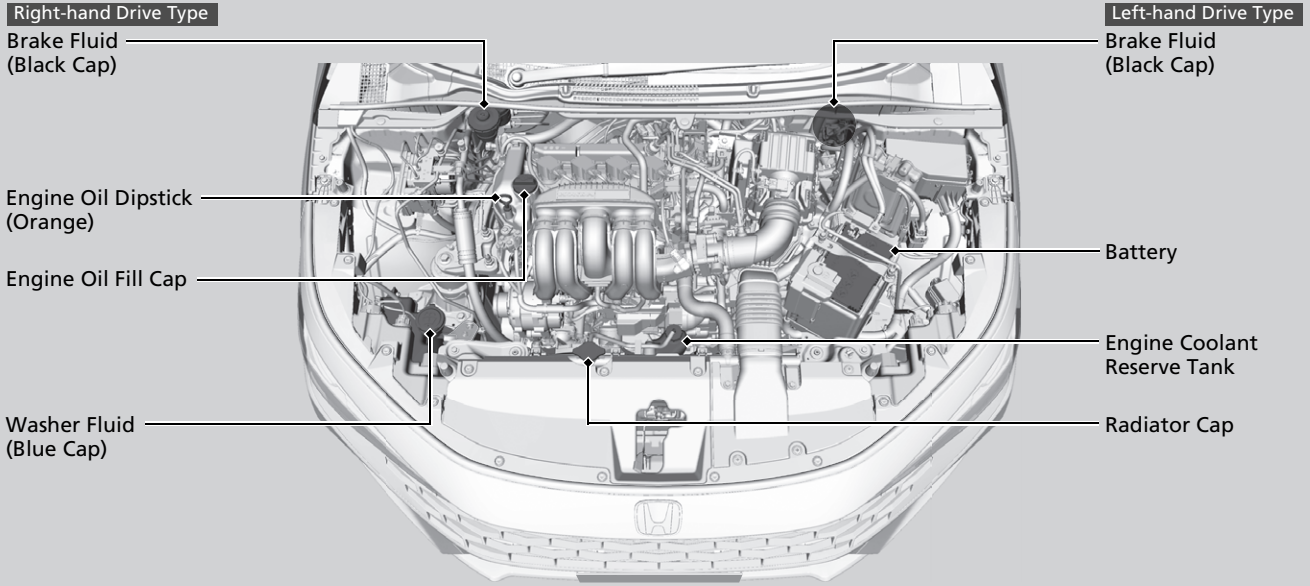
Maintenance Record

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
20,000 km (or 12 Mo.)			
40,000 km (or 24 Mo.)			
60,000 km (or 36 Mo.)			
80,000 km (or 48 Mo.)			
100,000 km (or 60 Mo.)			
120,000 km (or 72 Mo.)			
140,000 km (or 84 Mo.)			
160,000 km (or 96 Mo.)			
180,000 km (or 108 Mo.)			
200,000 km (or 120 Mo.)			

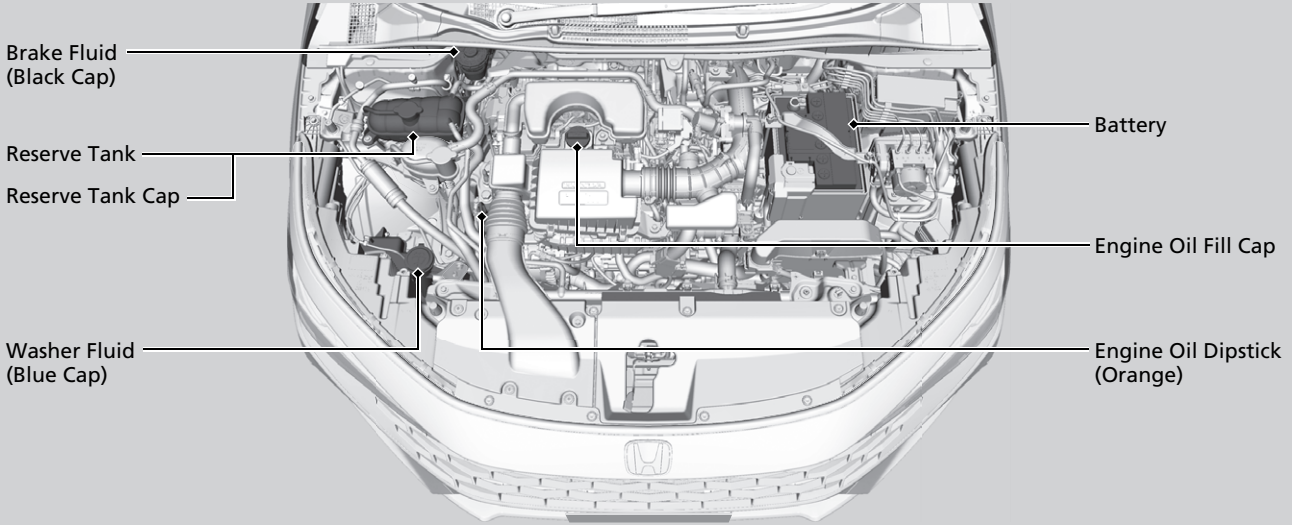
Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet

Except Thai models

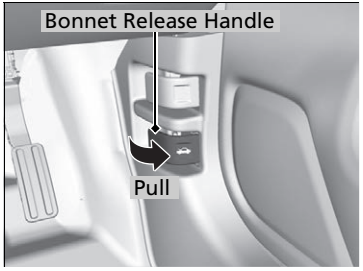


Continued

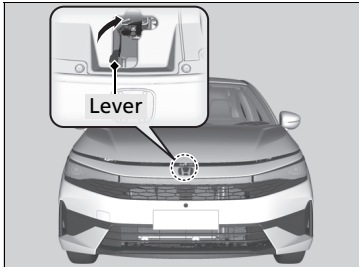
Thai models


Brake Fluid
(Black Cap)
Reserve Tank
Reserve Tank Cap
Washer Fluid
(Blue Cap)
Battery
Engine Oil Fill Cap
Engine Oil Dipstick
(Orange)

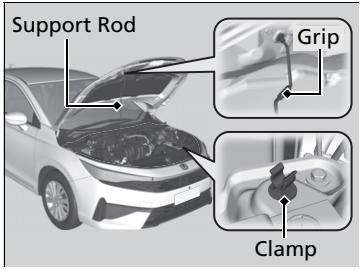
Opening the Bonnet



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
   ▶ The bonnet will pop up slightly.



3. Pull up the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

Opening the Bonnet

NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

Models with Auto Idle Stop

Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.

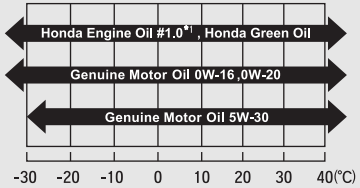
Recommended Engine Oil

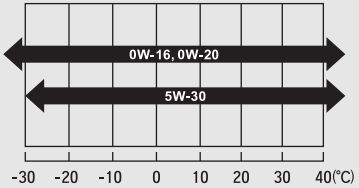
Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable type and viscosity (for the ambient temperature) as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

Except Thai models

Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
• Honda Engine OIL #1.0 • Honda Green OIL • Honda Genuine Motor Oil	• API service SN or higher grade fuel-efficient oil • API Certification Mark "Starburst" or "Shield" • ACEA A5/B5





*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

The following seal indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.

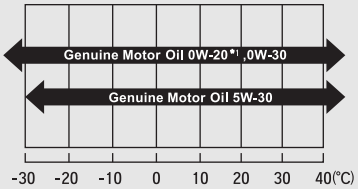
Except Thai models

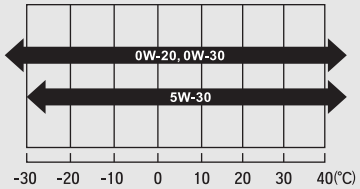




Thai models

Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
• Honda Genuine Motor Oil	• API service SN or higher grade fuel-efficient oil • API Certification Mark "Starburst" • ACEA A5/B5





*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

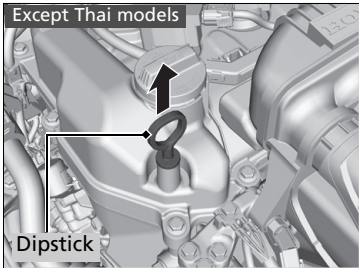
Recommended Engine Oil

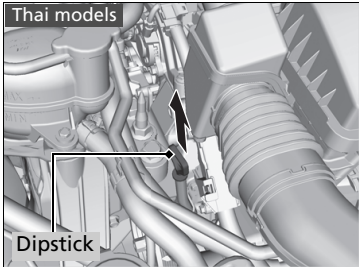
Thai models



Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.
Park the vehicle on level ground.
Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.



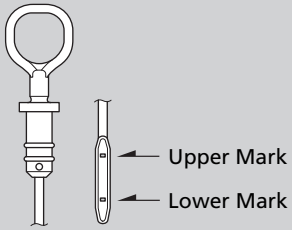


1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

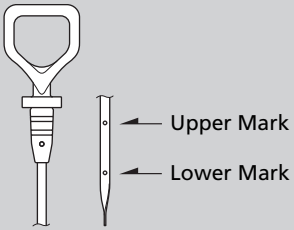
Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

Except Thai models

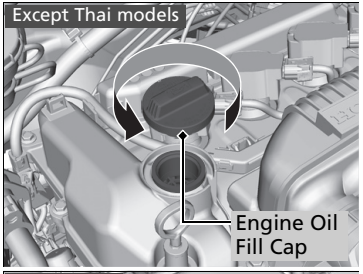


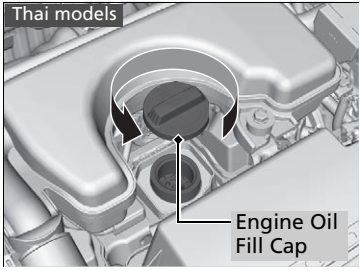
Thai models



4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

Adding Engine Oil





1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

Adding Engine Oil

NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

Except Thai models

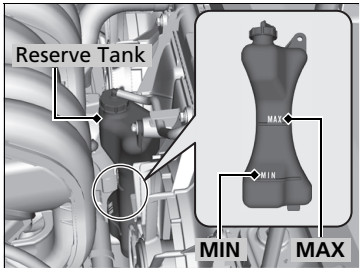
Engine Coolant

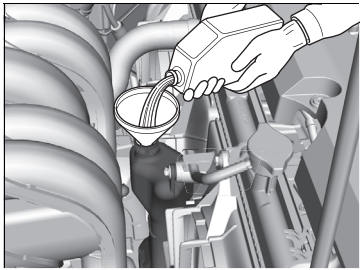
Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

■ Reserve Tank





1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
   ▶ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Continued

Engine Coolant

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

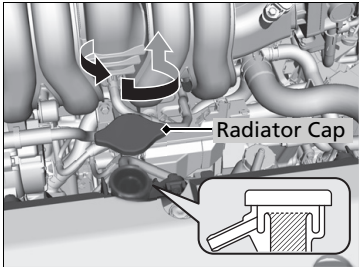
NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

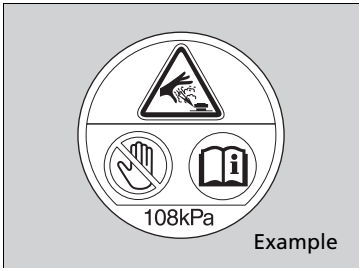
Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

■ Radiator



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8th turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

■ Radiator Cap*



- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 108 kPa.

Radiator

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

 * Not available on all models

Thai models

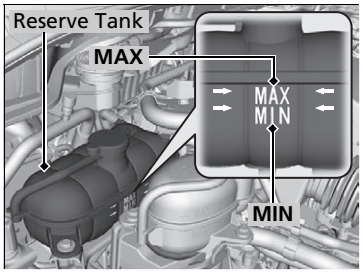
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

■ Checking the Coolant



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
   ▶ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Engine Coolant

⚠WARNING

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

NOTICE

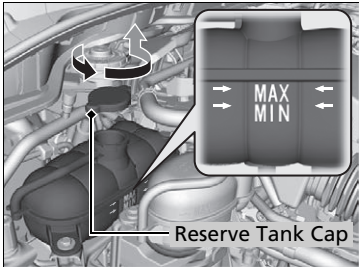
If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Continued

■ Adding the Coolant



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the reserve tank cap 1/8th turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Turn the reserve tank cap anticlockwise to remove it.
4. Pour coolant into the reserve tank until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
5. Put the reserve tank cap back on, and tighten it fully.

Adding the Coolant

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda HCF-2

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change continuously variable transmission fluid.

Maintenance Schedule P. 326

Do not attempt to check or change the continuously variable transmission fluid yourself.

Brake Fluid

Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

Transmission Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Honda HCF-2 with other transmission fluids.
Using a transmission fluid other than Honda HCF-2 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.
Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda HCF-2 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

Brake Fluid

NOTICE

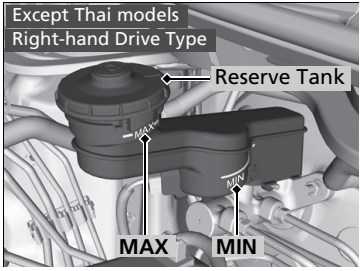
Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

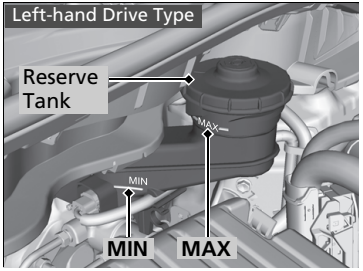
If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

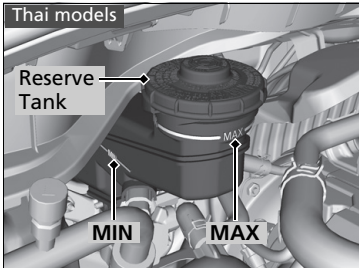
Continued

■ Checking the Brake Fluid



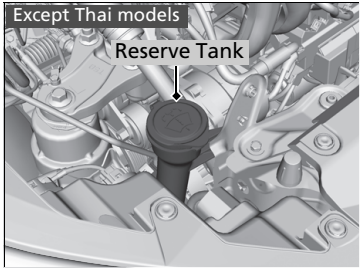
The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

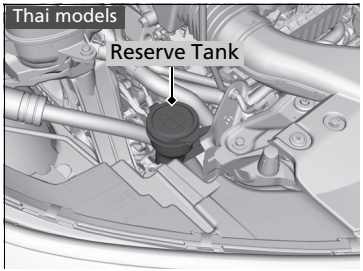




Refilling Window Washer Fluid

Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir.





If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

Fuel Filter

Replace fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale build up.

Headlight Bulbs

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Turn Signal, Position/Daytime Running Lights

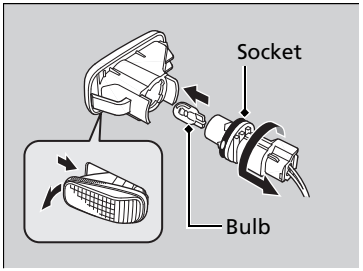
Front turn signal, position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Fender type

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Side Turn Signal Light: 5 W Amber (WY5W)



1. Push the front of the side turn signal assembly towards the rear of the vehicle until it pops out of the body.
2. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Door mirror type

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

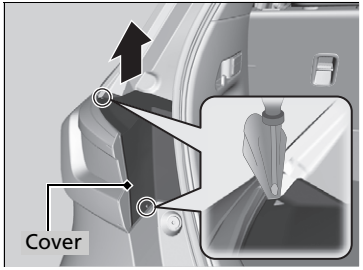
Headlight Bulbs

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

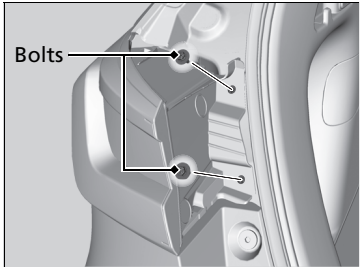
Brake, Brake/Taillight and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Brake Light:	**LED Type**
Brake/Taillight:	**LED Type**
Rear Turn Signal Light:	**21 W Amber (WY21W)**



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

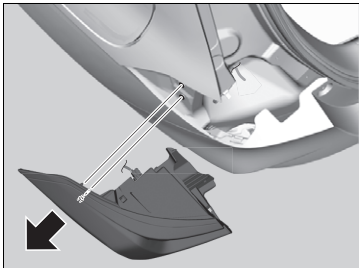


2. Use a Phillips-head screwdriver or socket to remove the bolts.

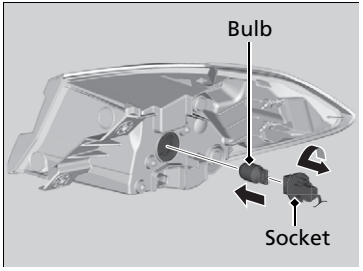
Brake, Brake/Taillight and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

Brake and taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Continued



3. Pull the light assembly out of the rear pillar.



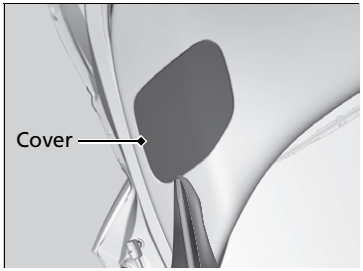
4. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.

5. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

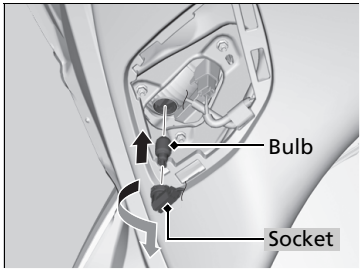
Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Taillight:	**LED Type**
Back-Up Light:	**16 W (W16W)**



1. Remove the cover by prying on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear Licence Plate Light

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

High-Mount Brake Light

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Grille Light*

Grille Light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

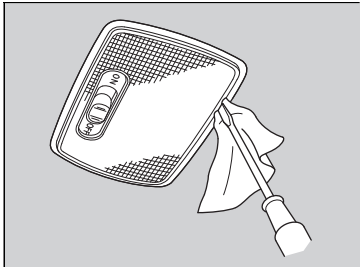
 * Not available on all models

Other Light Bulbs

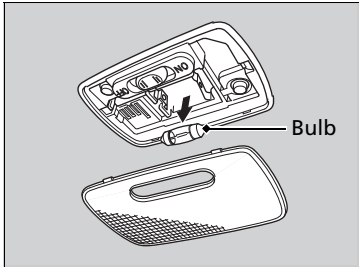
■ Ceiling Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Ceiling Light: 8 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

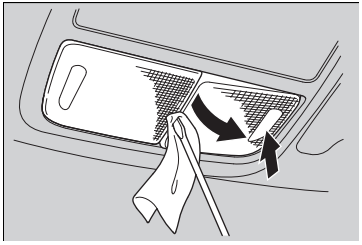


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

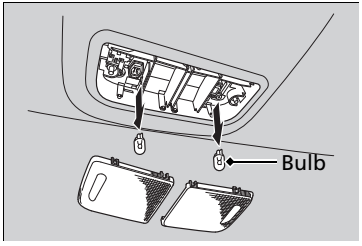
■ Map Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Map Light: 8 W



1. Push on the lens of the opposite side you are replacing.
2. Pry on the edge between the lenses using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

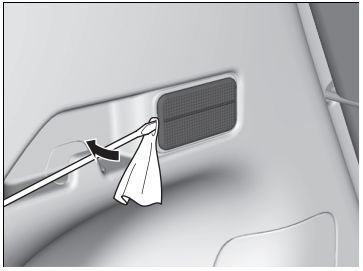


3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

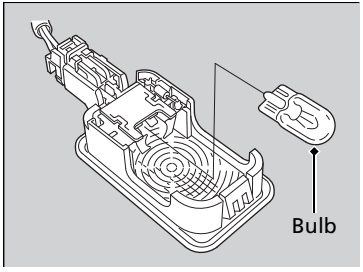
■ Luggage Area Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Luggage Area Light: 5 W



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

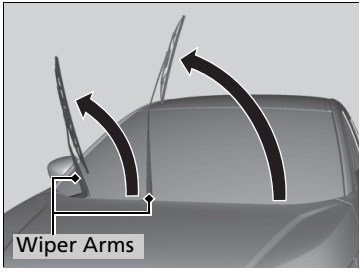


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

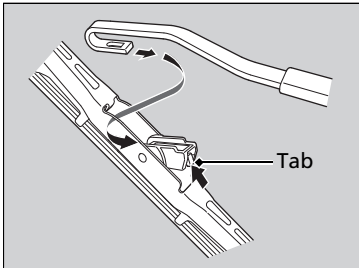
Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and become noisy, and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.

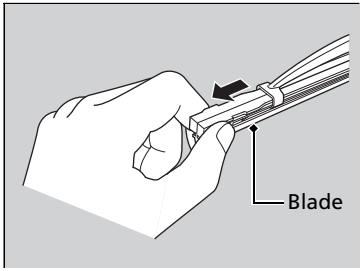


2. Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

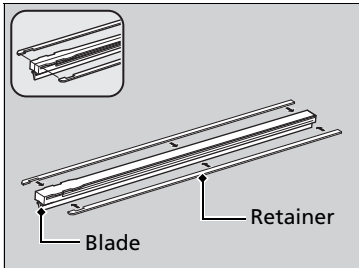
Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, as it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.



3. Slide the wiper blade out of the holder by pulling the tabbed end out.



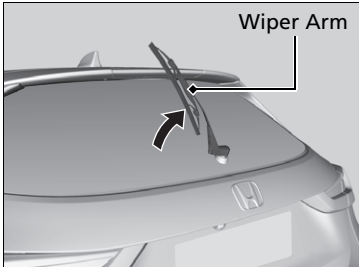
4. Remove the retainers from the wiper blade that has been removed, and mount to a new wiper blade.
▶ Correctly align the wiper blade protrusion and the retainer grooves.

5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder from the bottom end.
▶ The tab on the holder should fit in the indent of the wiper blade.

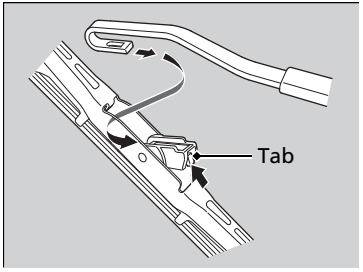
6. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm securely.

7. Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

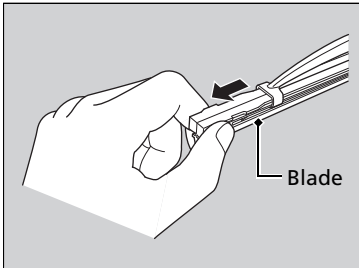
Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Raise the wiper arm off.



2. Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.



3. Slide the wiper blade out of the holder by pulling the tabbed end out.

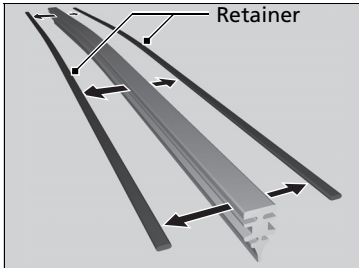
Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE

Do not try to forcefully lift up the wiper arm.
The wiper arm may be damaged if it is lifted too high.

NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm; as it may damage the rear window.



4. Remove the retainers from wiper blade and mount to a new rubber blade.
5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder from the bottom end.
▶ The tab on the holder should fit in the indent of the wiper blade.
6. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm securely.

Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare*. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10-20 kPa (0.1-0.2 bar, 1-2 psi) per month.

Checking Tyres

⚠WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3-0.4 bar, 4-6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

* Not available on all models

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems.
Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
  ➡ **Wear Indicators** P. 360
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

Checking Tyres

High speed driving

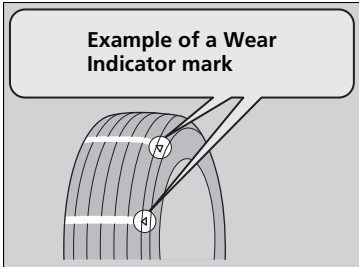
We recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you drive at sustained high speeds (over 160 km/h), adjust the cold tyre pressures as shown below to avoid excessive heat buildup and sudden tyre failure.

Malaysian models with 185/60R15 84H tyre	
Tyre Size	185/60R15 84H
Pressure	Front: 250 kPa (2.5 bar, 36 psi)
	Rear: 230 kPa (2.3 bar, 33 psi)

Thai models with 185/60R15 84H tyre	
Tyre Size	185/60R15 84H
Pressure	Front: 260 kPa (2.6 bar, 38 psi)
	Rear: 240 kPa (2.4 bar, 35 psi)

Models with 185/55R16 87H tyre	
Tyre Size	185/55R16 87H
Pressure	Front: 260 kPa (2.6 bar, 38 psi)
	Rear: 240 kPa (2.4 bar, 35 psi)

Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre. **Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.**

Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres, including the spare, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's and wheel nut's specifications match those of the original wheels.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

⚠WARNING

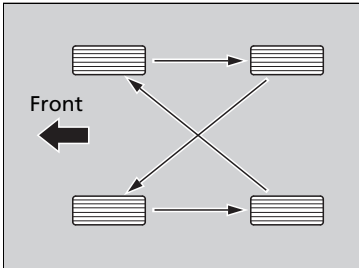
Installing improper wheel, wheel nuts and tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

Tyre Rotation

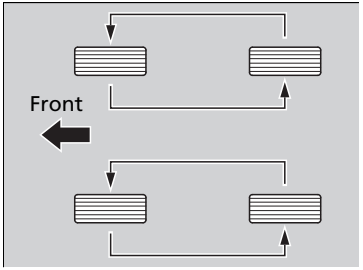
Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

■ Tyres without rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

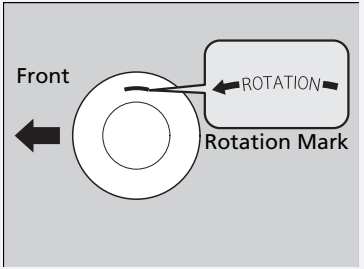
■ Tyres with rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Wheel nut torque for the tyres that come standard-equipped with your vehicle is as follows.
Wheel nut torque:
108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:
- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

For tyre chains:
- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Philippines and Laotian models

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
185/55R16 87H	RUD-matic classic 48479

*1:Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

Snow Traction Devices

⚠WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

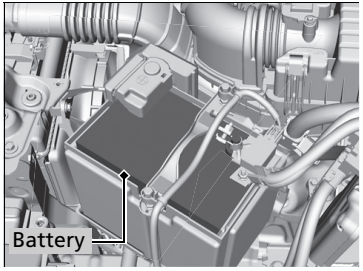
Continued

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

Snow Traction Devices

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

Checking the Battery



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the information display will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The clock resets.
  Clock P. 142

Battery

⚠WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

⚠WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

Battery

Emergency Procedures
Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.
Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.
Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.
Consult a dealer for more information.

Models with Auto Idle Stop

The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop.
Using a battery other than this specified type may shorten the battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type and size. Ask a dealer for more details.

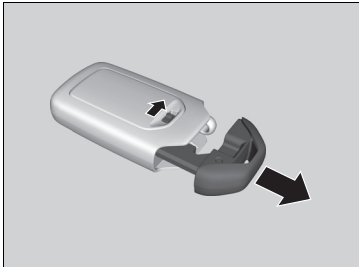
Specifications P. 428

Battery

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF**, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Road Departure Mitigation, and safety support indicator may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Replacing the Remote Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.

Replacing the Remote Battery

⚠⚠WARNING

CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD
The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed.
Keep new and used batteries away from children.
If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

CAUTION: Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

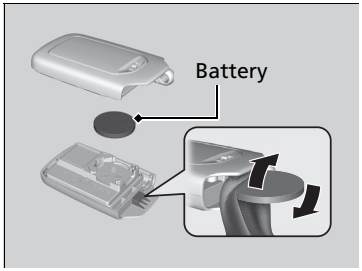
CAUTION: Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like, that can result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas during use, storage or transportation.

CAUTION: Do not dispose of a battery into fire or a hot oven, or give mechanically crushing or cutting of a battery, that can result in an explosion.

CAUTION: Do not subjected to extremely low air pressure at high altitude that may result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.

A warning mark is located adjacent to the button battery*.

* Not available on all models



2. With the buttons facing down, remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

Replacing the Remote Battery

NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

Dust and Pollen Filter

When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

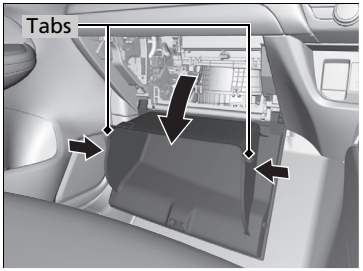
Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

Maintenance Schedule P. 326

How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.



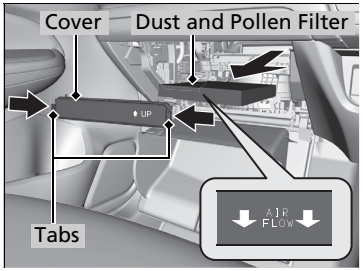
2. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
3. Pivot the glove box out of the way.

Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the cooling system*/climate control system* deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

* Not available on all models



4. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.
5. Remove the filter from the case.
6. Install a new filter in the case.
▶ Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

Dust and Pollen Filter

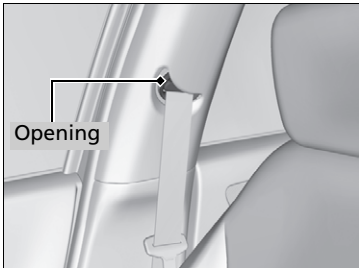
If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.
Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

■ Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the openings of the seat belt anchorages using a clean cloth.



Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle.
Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone-based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches.
Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.
If a silicone-based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.
Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.
Do not place used cloths on top of resin-based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

Cleaning the Window

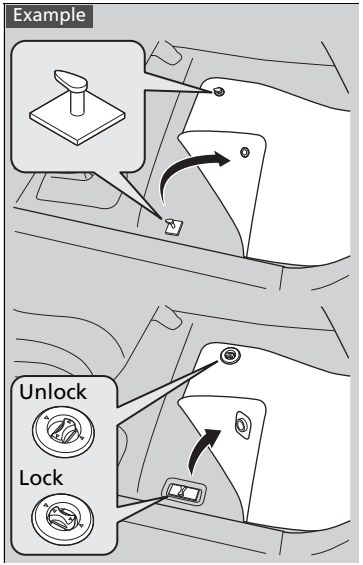
Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of the electrical components around the rearview mirror.

Floor Mats



The driver's floor mat hooks over floor anchorages, which keep the mat from sliding forward.

Do not put any additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

Floor Mats

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchorages. Position any rear seat floor mats properly. If not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

Continued

■ Maintaining Genuine Leather*

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather, resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats, resulting in discolouration or stains.

* Not available on all models

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap is stuck to painted surfaces.

■ Using an Automated Car Wash

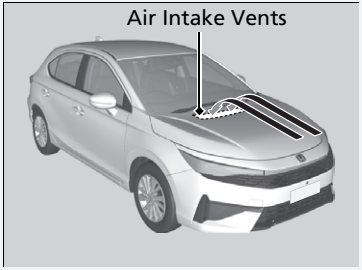
- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.

■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.
- Do not spray water directly onto the camera* or the area around it. Water may enter the lens and cause the camera to malfunction.

Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



If water and any chemicals are on the brakes when your vehicle is being washed, drive a short distance and apply the brakes several times before parking. Parking while brakes are wet may cause them to be stuck by rust.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin-coated parts, they may stain or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.
Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.
However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle over areas marked **SRS AIRBAG**, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows.
  Items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  ➡ **Fuses** P. 410
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

Accessories and Modifications

⚠WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine Accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Some Honda Genuine Accessories are supplied with an exclusive owner's manual for the operation and care detail of the product. If an accessory owner's manual is provided to you, please refer to it for full detail.

If any Honda Genuine Accessories become inoperable, refer to the separate accessory owner's manual (if applicable) or consult a dealer for assistance to troubleshoot the potential faulty condition.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

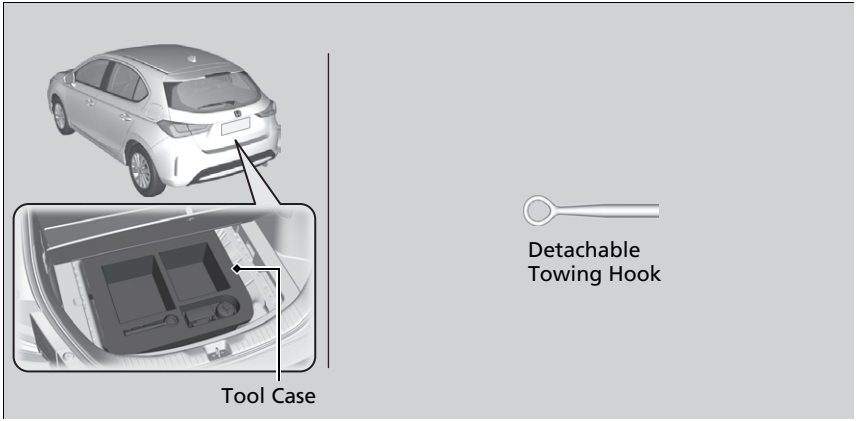
Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.

Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools
Types of Tools 382
If a Tyre Goes Flat
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre 383
Handling of the Jack 393
Engine Does Not Start
Checking the Engine 394
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak .. 396
Emergency Engine Stop 397
If the Battery Is Dead
Jump Starting Procedure 398
Shift Lever Does Not Move 402
Overheating
How to Handle Overheating 403
Indicator Coming On/Blinking
If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears 407
If the Charging System Indicator Comes On 408
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks 408
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On 409
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On 409
Fuses
Fuse Locations 410
Inspecting and Changing Fuses 423
Emergency Towing 424
If You Cannot Open the Tailgate 425

Types of Tools



Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the luggage area.

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

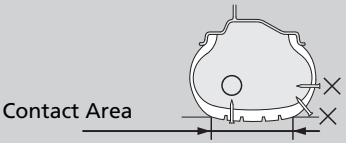
If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into P.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistant to have the vehicle towed.

- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4 mm.
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.



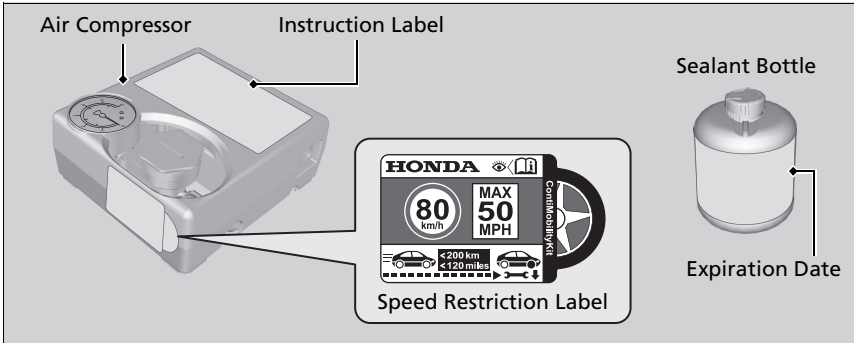
When the puncture is:	Kit Use
Smaller than 4 mm	Yes
Larger than 4 mm	No

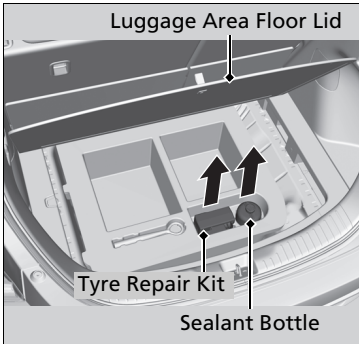
- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

Continued

■ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre





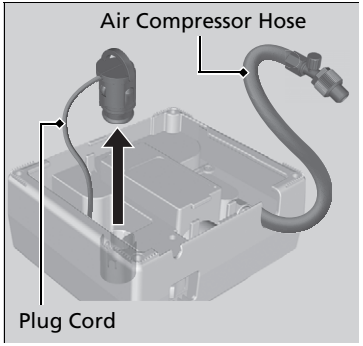
1. Pull the strap on the luggage area floor lid and open the lid.
2. Take the kit and sealant bottle out of the case.
3. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

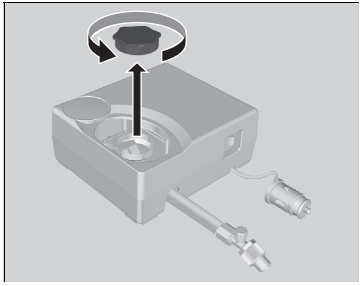
Speed restriction label are applied to the side of the temporary tyre repair kit.

When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction label provided on the kit.

Injecting the Sealant and Air



1. Take the air compressor hose and plug cord out of the back of the air compressor.



2. Remove the cap from the air compressor.

Injecting the Sealant and Air

⚠WARNING

Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children.

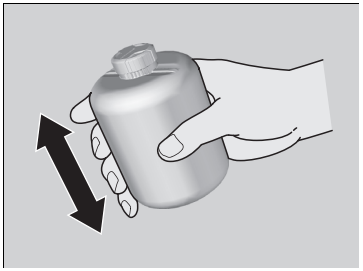
In cold temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it by keeping the bottle in the passenger compartment before using.

The sealant is latex based and can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe up any spills immediately.

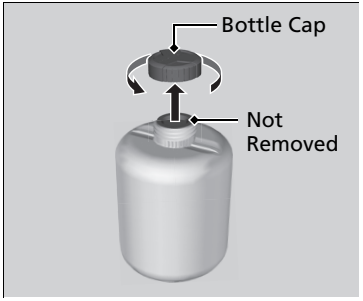
Do not remove the empty bottle after injecting the sealant.

See a Honda dealer for a replacement of sealant bottle and proper disposal of the empty bottle.

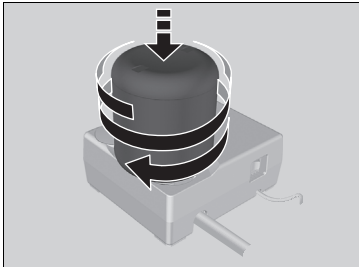
Continued



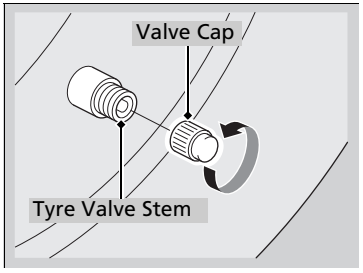
3. Shake the bottle well.



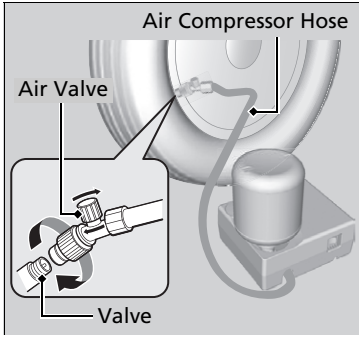
4. Remove the bottle cap.
▶ Do not remove the sealed cover.



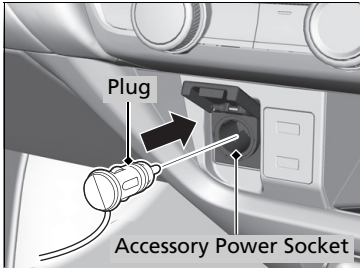
5. Screw the sealed bottle onto the air compressor.
▶ Screw the bottle tightly so that it does not become loose.



6. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.



7. Screw the air compressor hose onto the tyre valve.
▶ Make sure the air valve is closed and the air compressor is turned off.



8. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
➔ **Accessory Power Socket** P. 204

9. Start the engine.
➔ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 80

Injecting the Sealant and Air

⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

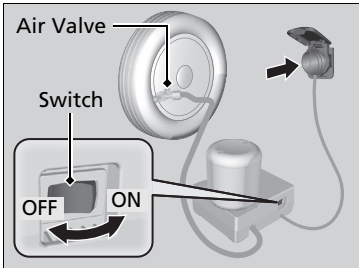
Turn the air compressor off when connecting the air compressor hose.

You hear a motor sound coming from the activated air compressor. This is normal.

If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.

If you want to measure the air pressure using a gauge, turn the air compressor off first.

Continued



10. Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
▶ The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.
▶ Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

11. After the air pressure reaches to specified pressure, turn off the compressor.
▶ Check the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.
▶ If overinflated, release the air by turning the air valve. Be careful not to spill any sealant.

12. Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.

13. Unscrew the air compressor hose from the tyre valve. Install the valve cap.
▶ Be careful not to spill any sealant when the hose is disconnected. Wipe away any spills.

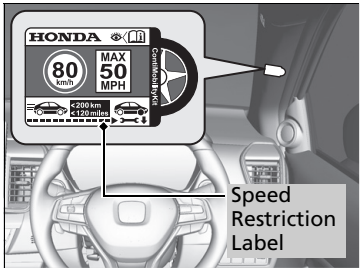
14. Store the tyre repair kit in the luggage area.
▶ Do not remove the sealant bottle from the air compressor.

Injecting the Sealant and Air

Inform the use of tyre sealant when you ask a Honda dealer or the road assistant service for replacing or repairing the flat tyre.

This air compressor is designed for the automotive tyre. Check the following:
- The power supply of the air compressor is limited to your vehicle's 12-volt DC accessory power socket.
- Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 10 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.
  Make it cool down when using the compressor continuously.

■ Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre



1. Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.
2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes or 3 to 10 kilometres.
   ▶ Do not exceed 80 km/h.
3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.

Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

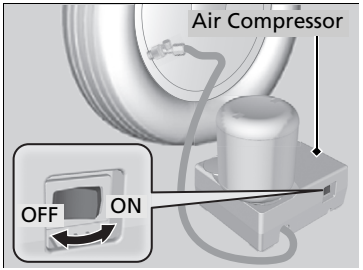
⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Continued



4. Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the compressor.
▶ Do not turn the air compressor switch on to check the pressure.

5. If the air pressure is
- Less than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi): Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.
  ➡ **Emergency Towing** P. 424
- Specified air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.) or more: Continue driving until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h.
- Greater than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi), but less than specified air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.): Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
  ➡ **Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre** P. 391

And repeat steps 2 to 4 until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h.
▶ The distance to the nearest service station has to be within about 200 kilometres.

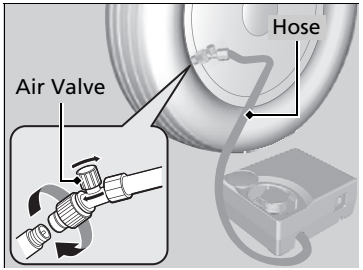
6. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

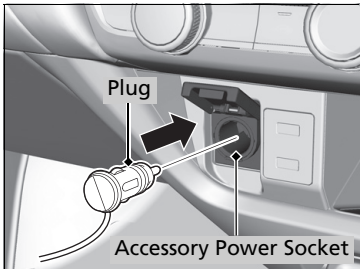
Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

Make sure to store the air compressor with the empty bottle in the luggage area.

■ Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.





1. Open the luggage area floor lid.
   ➡ **Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre** P. 384
2. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the tyre to inflate, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
3. Remove the valve cap.
4. Attach the hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.
   ▶ Make sure the air valve is closed.
5. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
   ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
   ➡ **Accessory Power Socket** P. 204
6. Start the engine.
   ➡ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 80

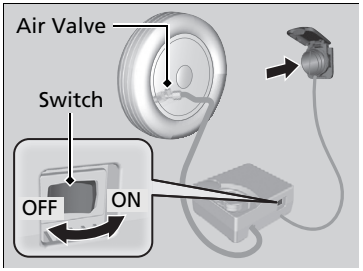
Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Continued

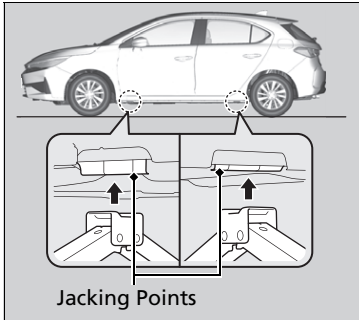


7. Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
▶ The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
▶ If you have started the engine, leave it running while injecting air.
8. Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
9. Turn off the air compressor.
▶ Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
▶ If overinflated, turn the air valve to deflate.
10. Turn off the engine, then unplug the air compressor from the accessory power socket.
11. Unscrew the air compressor hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
12. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

NOTICE
Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 10 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Your vehicle has jacking points as shown.
When replacing your tyres, consult a dealer.



Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

Starter condition	Checklist
Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly. The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	**Check for a message on the driver information interface.** • If the **To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote**[*1]**/To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button**[*2] message appears ➔ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak** P. 396 ▶Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range ➔ **ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range** P. 163
The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start. There may be a problem with a fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	**Review the engine start procedure.** Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again. ➔ **Starting the Engine** P. 222
	Check the immobilizer system indicator. When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started. ➔ **Immobilizer System** P. 159 ➔ **Immobilizer System Indicator** P. 93
	Check the fuel level. There should be enough fuel in the tank. ➔ **Fuel Gauge** P. 100
	Check the fuses. Check all fuses, or have the vehicle checked by a dealer. ➔ **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 423
	If the problem continues: ➔ **Emergency Towing** P. 424

If you cannot start the engine after checking all the items in the list above, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

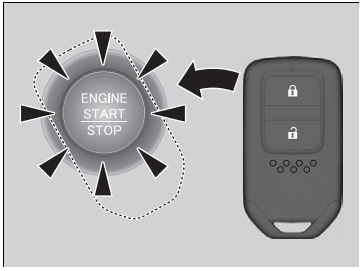
If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

➡ **If the Battery Is Dead** P. 398

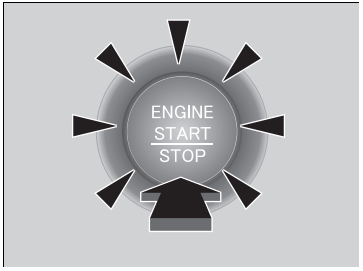
Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for more than 15 seconds.

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, **To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote**[*1]**/To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button**[*2] message appears on the driver information interface.
Start the engine as follows:



1. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
   ▶ The beeper sounds and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.
2. Touch the centre of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
   ▶ The beeper sounds, and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button stays on for about 10 seconds.



3. Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is on.
   ▶ The engine starts.
   ▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the engine disables the power assist the engine provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place.

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped.
To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, put the transmission into P after the vehicle comes to a complete stop.
Then, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

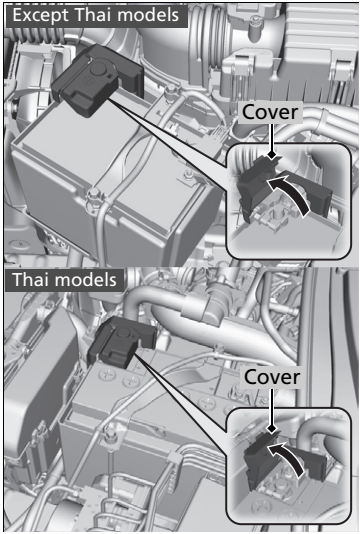
Emergency Engine Stop

NOTICE

Do not press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be turned off.
If you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the bonnet.



1. Open the terminal cover on your vehicle's battery positive ⊕ terminal.

Jump Starting Procedure

⚠WARNING

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

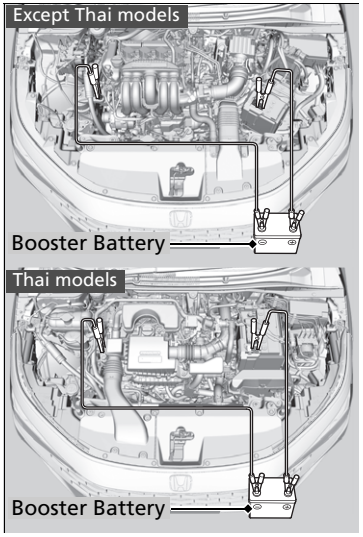
Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

NOTICE

If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.



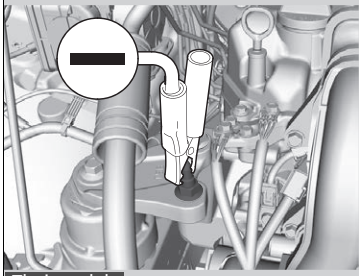
2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.

3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery ⊕ terminal.
- ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
- ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.

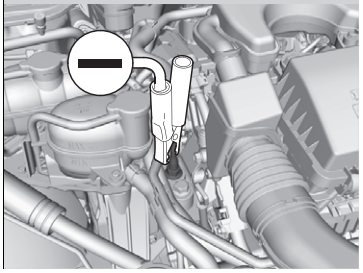
4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery ⊖ terminal.

Continued

Except Thai models



Thai models



5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine mounting bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.

6. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its RPM slightly.

7. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

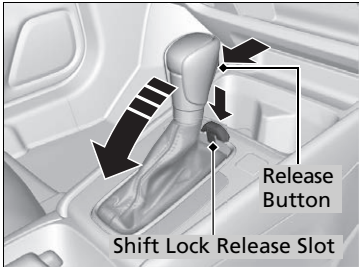
If the Battery Is Dead

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF**, safety support, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), and Road Departure Mitigation indicator may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Shift Lever Does Not Move

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the P position.

■ Releasing the Lock



1. Set the parking brake.
2. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.
3. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
4. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into N.
   ▶ The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.**[*1]/ **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.**[*2] message appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.

2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.

▶ **No steam or spray present:**
Keep the engine running and open the bonnet.

▶ **Steam or spray is present:**
Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then, open the bonnet.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

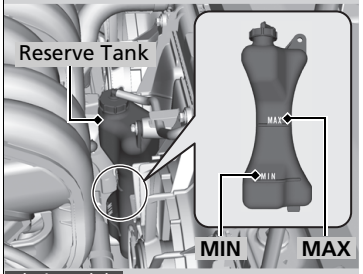
Continuing to drive with the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.**[*1]/ **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.**[*2] message on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

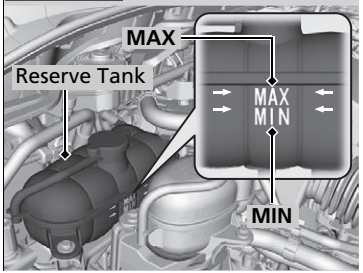
Continued

■ Next thing to do

Except Thai models



Thai models



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.**[*1]**/Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.**[*2] message on the driver information interface disappears.
▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.

*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

How to Handle Overheating

Except Thai models

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

Thai models

⚠WARNING

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

All models

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.

▶ If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

Except Thai models

▶ If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

Thai models

▶ If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the reserve tank cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

Continued

■ **Last thing to do**

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it.

If the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.**[*1]/ **Engine Temperature Too Hot. Allow Engine To Cool.**[*2] message does not appear, resume driving. If it appears again, contact a dealer for repairs.

*1: Models with A-type meter

*2: Models with B-type meter

If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



■ **Reasons for the warning to appear**

Appears when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ **What to do as soon as the warning appears**

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.

2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ **What to do after parking the vehicle**

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for approximately three minutes.

2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.

➡ **Oil Check** P. 338

3. Start the engine and check the **Engine oil pressure low**[*1]/**Engine Oil Pressure Low**[*2] warning.

▶ The warning disappears: Start driving again.

▶ The warning does not disappear: Immediately stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs.

*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

If the Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning Appears

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



■ **Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink**

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp comes on**

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp blinks**

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving**

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.
  If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
- If **Do not drive**[*1]/**Do Not Drive**[*2] displays on the driver information interface, immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.

*1: Models with A-type meter
*2: Models with B-type meter

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.
It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator (red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.
Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If both red and amber brake system indicators come on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.

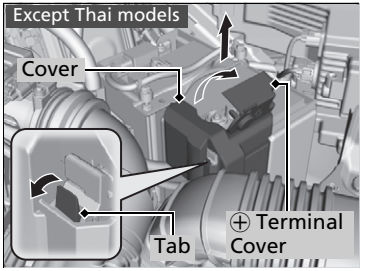
Fuse Locations

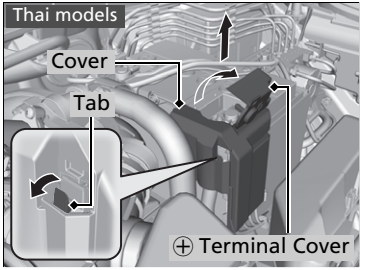
If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

There are two fuse boxes in the engine compartment.

■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Type A)

Located near the ⊕ terminal on the battery.

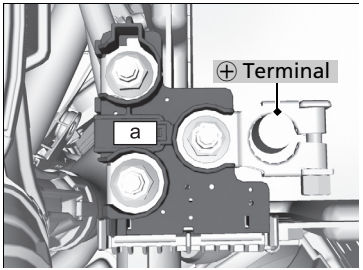


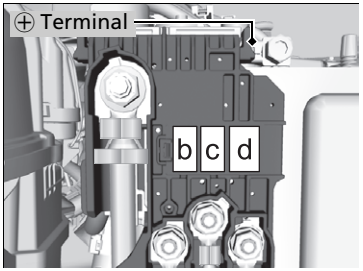


1. Open the ⊕ terminal cover.
2. Remove the cover by pulling the tab as shown.
Replacement of engine compartment fuses should be done by a dealer.

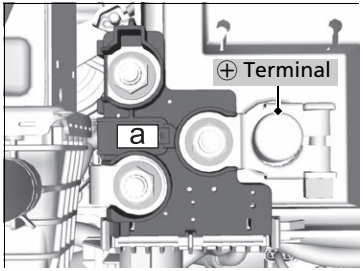
■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

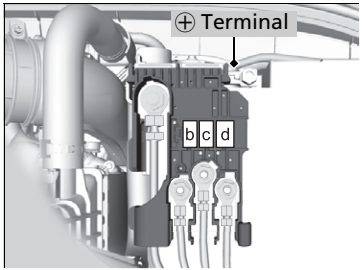
Except Thai models





Thai models





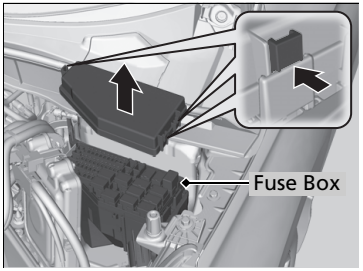
		Circuit Protected	Amps
a		MAIN	100 A*1 150 A*2
b		MAIN (FAN)	70 A
c		MAIN (ENG)	80 A
d		EPS	70 A

*1:Except Thai models
*2:Thai models

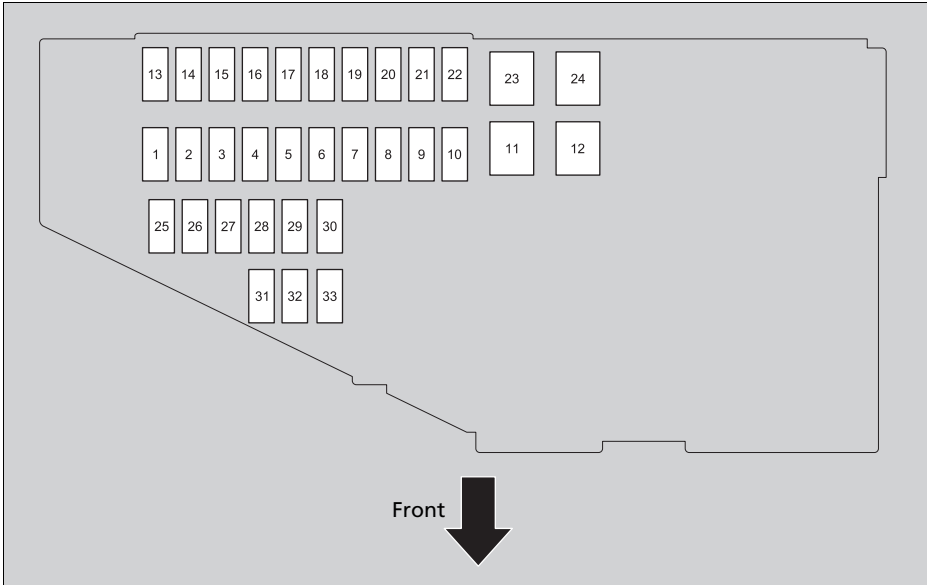
Except Thai models

■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Type B)

Located in the back of the engine compartment on the left side.
Push the tabs to open the box.



Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

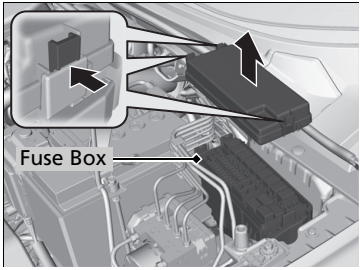
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Wiper	30 A
2	–	–
3	Hazard	10 A
4	Stop	10 A
5	–	–
6	–	–
7	–	–
8	IGP	15 A
9	IG Coil	15 A
10	DBW	15 A
11	ABS/VSA MTR	40 A
12	Main Fan	30 A
13	ST Magnetic SW	30 A
14	MG Clutch	7.5 A
15	Battery Sensor	7.5 A
16	Transmission Control Unit	10 A
17	Back Up FI-ECU	10 A
18	Horn	10 A
19	–	–
20	–	–
21	Back Up Main	15 A
22	Back Up	10 A
23	Sub Fan	30 A
24	ABS/VSA FSR	30 A
25	IGP2 Sub	7.5 A
26	IGPS (LAF)	10 A
27	–	–
28	–	–
29	–	–
30	–	–
31	Starter DIAG	7.5 A
32	–	–
33	–	–

Continued

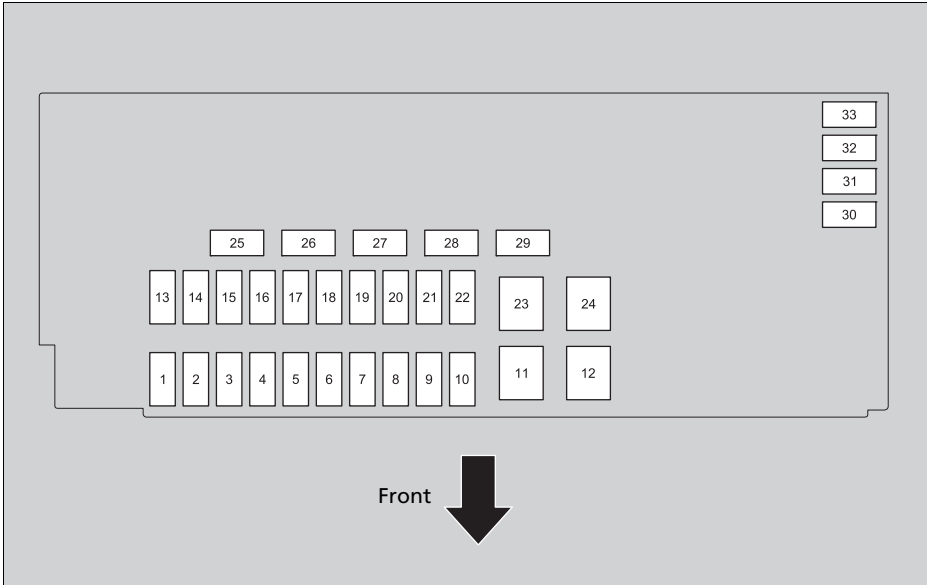
Thai models

■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Type B)

Located in the back of the engine compartment on the left side.
Push the tabs to open the box.



Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



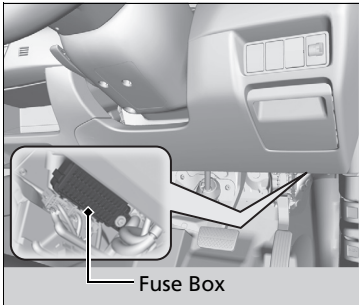
■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	–	–
2	EOP	20 A
3	Hazard	10 A
4	–	–
5	Wiper	30 A
6	Stop	10 A
7	IGP	20 A
8	IG Coil	15 A
9	–	–
10	–	–
11	ABS/VSA MTR	40 A
12	Main Fan	30 A
13	ST Magnetic SW	30 A
14	MG Clutch	7.5 A
15	Back Up FI-ECU	10 A
16	TCU	10 A
17	Engine Water Pump	10 A
18	Horn	10 A
19	–	–
20	IGP2	15 A

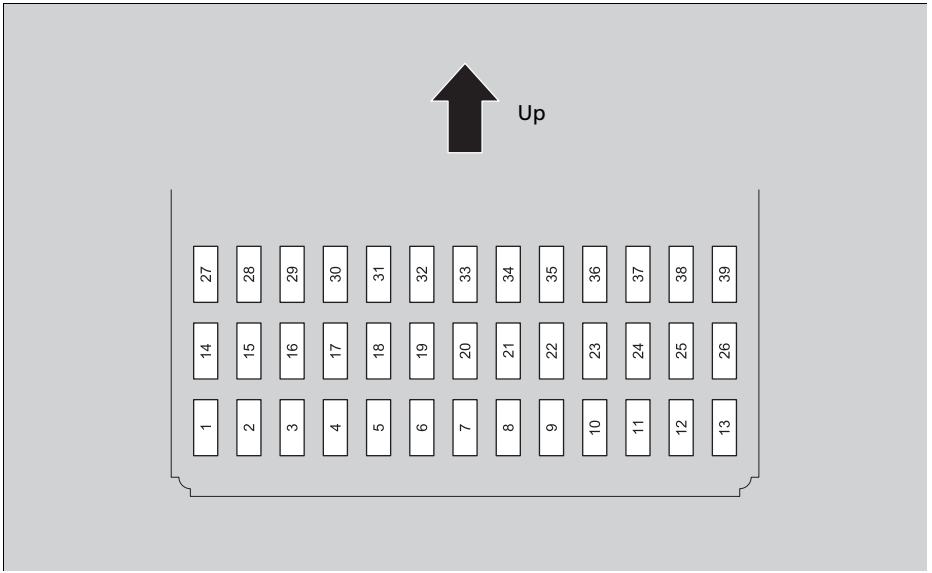
	Circuit Protected	Amps
21	Back Up	10 A
22	–	–
23	Sub Fan	30 A
24	ABS/VSA FSR	30 A
25	Starter DIAG	7.5 A
26	–	–
27	–	–
28	–	–
29	Back Up 2	30 A
30	–	–
31	IGP2 Sub	7.5 A
32	–	–
33	–	–

■ Driver's Side Interior Fuse Box A

Located under the dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown in the following image.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

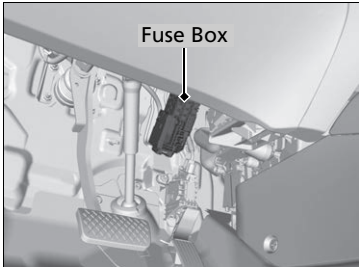
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Accessory	7.5 A
2	Accessory Key Lock	7.5 A
3	–	–
4	–	–
5	Option	10 A
6	Option2	10 A
7	Meter	10 A
8	Fuel Pump	15 A
9	A/C	10 A
10	–	–
11	Mon	5 A
12	Right Side Door Lock	10 A
13	Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
14	Rear Left Power Window	20 A
15	Front Passenger's Power Window	20 A
16	Door Lock	20 A
17	Transmission Control Unit	10 A
18	–	–
19	–	–
20	Starter Cut	7.5 A
21	ACG	10 A*1 15 A*2
22	Daytime Running Lights	7.5 A
23	–	–
24	Option	7.5 A
25	–	–
26	Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
27	Rear Right Power Window	20 A
28	Driver's Power Window	20 A
29	Front Accessory Socket	20 A
30	Smart	10 A
31	USB*1	(10 A)
32	–	–
33	–	–
34	ABS/VSA	10 A
35	SRS	10 A
36	–	–
37	IMG	10 A
38	Left Side Door Lock	10 A
39	–	–

*1:Except Thai models
*2:Thai models

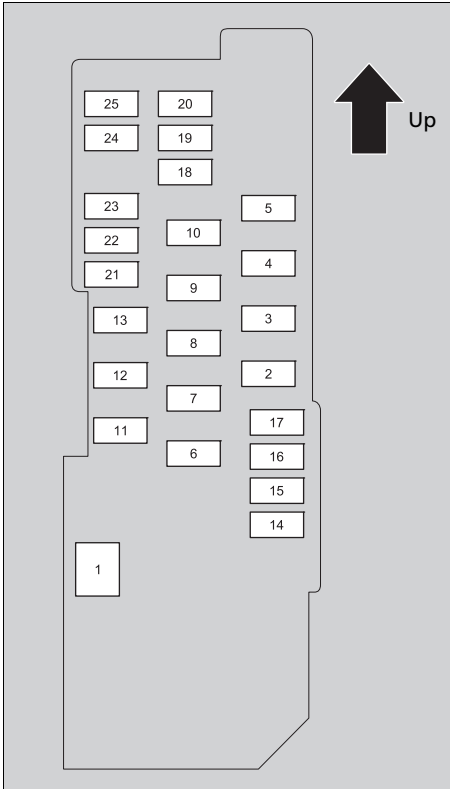
Left-hand Drive Type

■ Driver's Side Interior Fuse Box B

Located under the dashboard.



Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

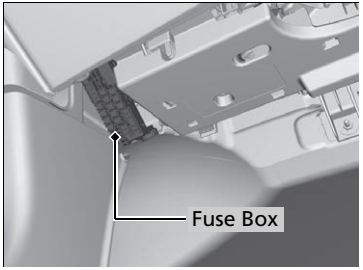
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Fuse Box Main1*1	60 A
2	IG Main	30 A
3	IG Main 2	30 A
4	Relay Module1	30 A
5	Relay Module2	30 A
6	Fuse Box Main2	40 A
7	Fuse Box Option	40 A
8	–	–
9	–	–
10	–	–
11	–	–
12	Heater Motor	30 A
13	Rear Demister	30 A
14	SRS	10 A
15	–	–
16	–	–
17	–	–
18	–	–
19	USB Charger	10 A
20	–	–
21	Washer	15 A
22	–	–
23	–	–
24	–	–
25	–	–

*1:Replacement of this fuses should be done by a dealer.

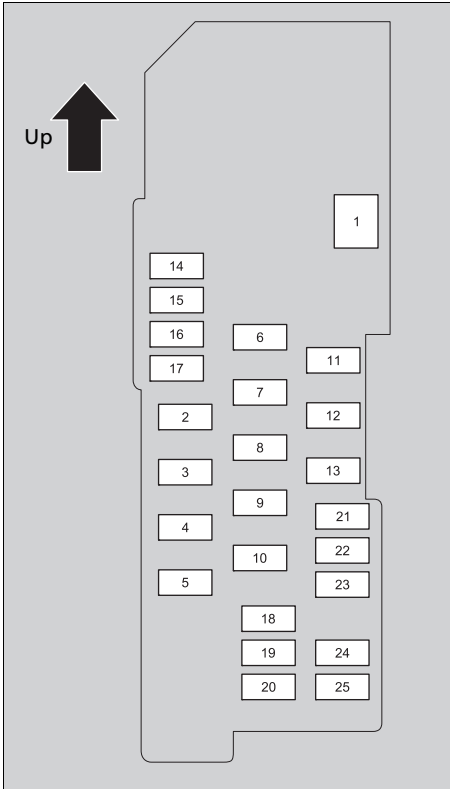
Right-hand Drive Type

■ Passenger's Side Interior Fuse Box A

Located under the dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown in the following image.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Fuse Box Main1*1	60 A
2	IG Main	30 A
3	IG Main 2	30 A
4	Relay Module1	30 A
5	Relay Module2	30 A
6	Fuse Box Main2	40 A
7	Fuse Box Option*3	(40 A)
8	–	–
9	Booster Motor*2	(40 A)
10	DC/DC1*2	(30 A)
11	–	–
12	Heater Motor	30 A
13	Rear Demister	30 A
14	SRS	10 A
15	–	–
16	–	–
17	–	–
18	–	–
19	USB Charger*3	(10 A)
20	Auto Retra*3	(7.5 A)
21	Washer	15 A
22	–	–
23	–	–
24	–	–
25	–	–

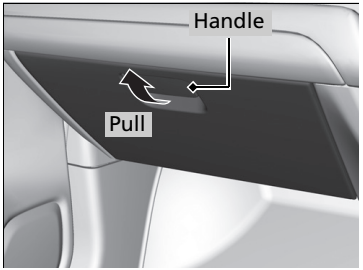
*1:Replacement of this fuses should be done by a dealer.
*2:Thai models
*3:Malaysian models

Thai models

■ Passenger's Side Interior Fuse Box B

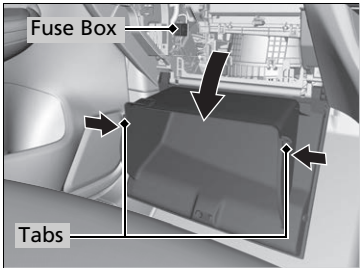
Located under the dashboard.

1. Open the glove box.

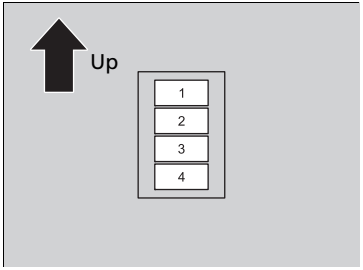


2. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.

3. Pivot the glove box out of the way.



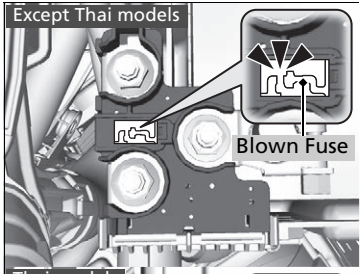
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.

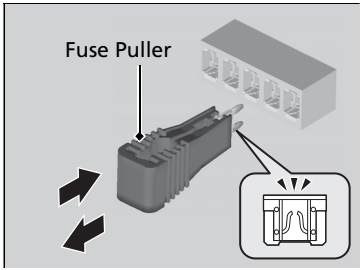


■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	ACC Cut VST	7.5 A
2	–	–
3	VST IG1-1	7.5 A
4	Back Up 2 Main	15 A

Inspecting and Changing Fuses





1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the large fuses in the engine compartment.
▶ If the fuse is blown, have it replace by a dealer.

4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
▶ If there is a blown fuse, remove it with a commercially available fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE
Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage.
Fuse Locations P. 410
Replace with a fuse of the same specified amperage.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

■ Flatbed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.
This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

■ Wheel lift equipment

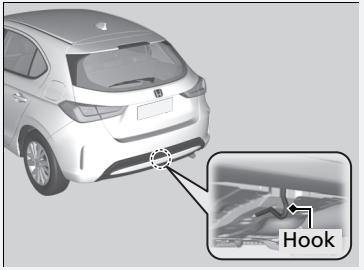
The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

Emergency Towing

NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

Do not use the hook on the rear of your vehicle for the towing of other vehicles or emergency removal of your vehicle. The hook may break. If your vehicle needs to be towed backward, contact a dealer or a professional towing service.



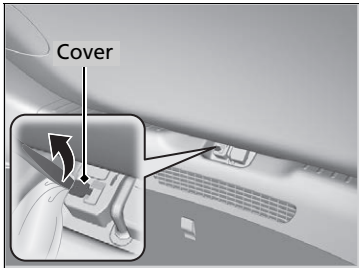
NOTICE

Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

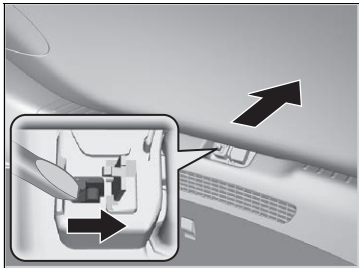
Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

If you cannot open the tailgate, use the following procedure.



1. Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover on the back of the tailgate.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while sliding the lever to the right with the flat-tip screwdriver.

What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

Following up:
After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications 428
Identification Numbers
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number 431
Devices that Emit Radio Waves* 432
Open Source Licence 434

* Not available on all models

■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	CITY HATCHBACK	
Curb Weight	1,137 kg*1 1,145-1,149 kg*2 1,149 kg*3	
Maximum Permissible Weight	1,600 kg	
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	Front	900 kg*3 870 kg*4
	Rear	715 kg*3 735 kg*4

*1: Philippines and Laotian models
*2: Malaysian models
*3: Thai models
*4: Except Thai models

■ Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 3-cylinder DOHC*1 Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC*2	
Bore x Stroke	73.0 x 78.7 mm*1 73.0 x 89.5 mm*2	
Displacement	988 cm³*1 1,498 cm³*2	
Compression Ratio	10.0 : 1*1 10.6 : 1*2	
Spark Plugs	NGK	ILZKAR8H8S*1 DILZKAR7C11H*2
	DENSO	DXE22HCR11H*2

*1: Thai models
*2: Except Thai models

■ Fuel

Type	Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher*1
	Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher*2
Fuel Tank Capacity	40 L

*1: Thai models
*2: Except Thai models

■ Battery

Capacity	48AH(5)60AH(20)*1 27AH(5)30AH(20)*2

*1: Thai models
*2: Except Thai models
Idle Stop:
The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type (LN2 EFB). Ask a dealer for more details.

■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	1.8 L

■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (High/Low Beams)	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	LED
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Grille Light*	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Front Fenders)*	5 W Amber (WY5W)
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)*	LED
Brake Lights	LED
Brake/Taillights	LED
Taillights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21 W Amber (WY21W)
Back-Up Lights	16 W (W16W)
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Rear Licence Plate Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Map Lights	8 W
Ceiling Light	8 W
Door Inner Handle Lights*	LED
Door Pocket Lights*	LED
Foot Lights*	LED
Centre Pocket Light	LED
Luggage Area Light	5 W

* Not available on all models

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	355 - 405 g*1 395 - 445 g*2

*1: Thai models
*2: Except Thai models

■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda HCF-2	
Capacity	Change	2.8 L

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	Thai models ·Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30 ·ACEA A5/B5, API service SN or higher grade 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30 Except Thai models ·Honda Engine OIL #1.0 ·Honda Green OIL ·Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-16, 0W-20, 5W-30 ·ACEA A5/B5, API service SN or higher grade 0W-16, 0W-20, 5W-30	
Capacity	Change	3.5 L*1 3.1 L*2
	Change including filter	3.8 L*1 3.3 L*2

*1: Thai models
*2: Except Thai models

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	3.67 L*1 (change including the remaining 0.42 L in the reserve tank) 3.98 L*2 (change including the remaining 0.42 L in the reserve tank) 5.19 L*3 (change including the remaining 0.6 L in the reserve tank)

*1: Malaysian models
*2: Philippines and Laotian models
*3: Thai models

Continued

■ Tyre

Regular	Size*1	185/60R15 84H 185/55R16 87H
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Wheel Size	Regular	15 x 6J*2 16 x 6J*3

*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.
*2: Models with 15 inch wheel
*3: Models with 16 inch wheel

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Drum*1 Solid disc*2
Parking	Mechanical

*1: Thai, Philippines and Laotian models
*2: Malaysian models

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Thai models

Length		4,362 mm
Width		1,748 mm
Height		1,488 mm
Wheelbase		2,589 mm
Track	Front	1,495 mm
	Rear	1,483 mm

Philippines and Laotian models

Length		4,372 mm
Width		1,748 mm
Height		1,476 mm
Wheelbase		2,588 mm
Track	Front	1,497 mm
	Rear	1,485 mm

Malaysian models

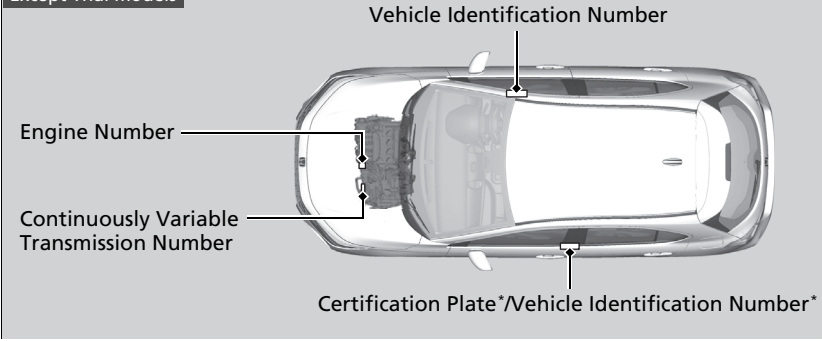
Length		4,362 mm*1 4,372 mm*2
Width		1,748 mm
Height		1,488 mm
Wheelbase		2,591 mm*1 2,590 mm*2
Track	Front	1,496 mm*1 1,497 mm*2
	Rear	1,483 mm*1 1,485 mm*2

*1: Models without grille light
*2: Models with grille light

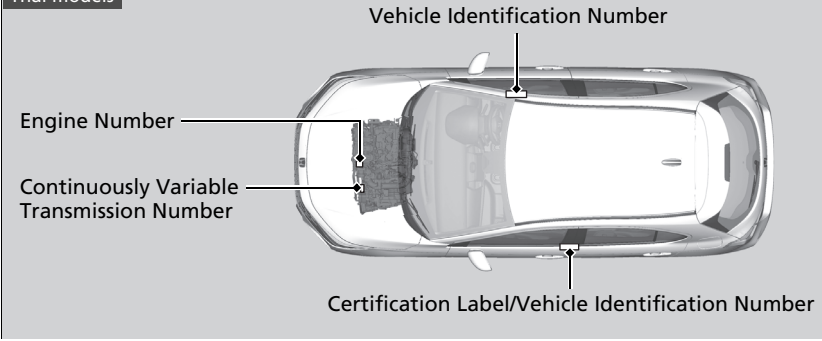
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle.
The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number and transmission number are shown as follows.

Except Thai models



Thai models

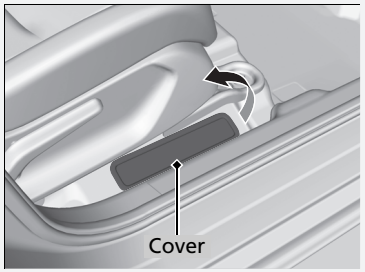


* Not available on all models

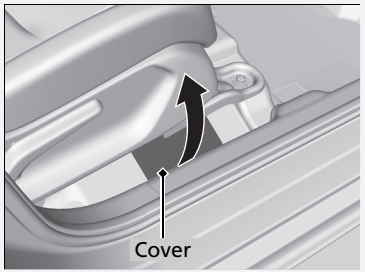
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.

Except Thai models



Thai models



It is prohibited to cover, paint, weld, cut, perforate, alter or remove the VIN.

Devices that Emit Radio Waves*

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

Thai models

Keyless Access System
เครื่อง โทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนดของ กสทช

 * Not available on all models

	BCM Keyless Access System	FOB Keyless Remote
Laotian models	*https://www.sws.co.jp/en/product/document/certificate/HAR0004* CE Hereby, Sumitomo Wiring Systems, Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type HAR0004 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: *https://www.sws.co.jp/en/product/document/certificate/HAR0004* Intended use: Short range device for remote control Postal address: 1820, Nakanoike, Mikkaichi-cho, Suzuka, Mie 513-8631 JAPAN Frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; 125kHz, 433.92MHz. Maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; 107.2dBuV/m@10m. Importer Name: NCX Co., Ltd. Postal address: Suphanouvong Road, Ban Wattayyaithong Sikhodtabong District, Vientiane Capital Lao P.D.R	*http://www.alps.com/products/common/pdf/HandUnit/TWB1G0090.pdf* CE Hereby, ALPSALPINE CO., LTD. declares that the radio equipment type TWB1G0090 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: *http://www.alps.com/products/common/pdf/HandUnit/TWB1G0090.pdf* Intended use: Short range device for remote control Postal address: 6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city, Miyagi-pref., JAPAN 989-6181 Frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; 433.92MHz. Maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; 80.8dBuV/m@3m. Importer Name: NCX Co., Ltd. Postal address: Suphanouvong Road, Ban Wattayyaithong Sikhodtabong District, Vientiane Capital Lao P.D.R

■ TCU open source licence*

Free/Open Source Software Information
This product contains Free/Open Source Software(FOSS).
The licence information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.
https://www.denso.com/global/en/opensource/tcu/honda/

* Not available on all models

Numbers

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode 233

A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 306
Accessories and Modifications 378
Accessory Power Sockets 204
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 267
Adding
  Coolant 341, 343
  Engine Oil 340
  Washer 347
Additives, Engine Oil 336, 338
Adjusting
  Armrest 195
  Front Seats 184
  Head Restraints 192
  Headlights 170
  Mirrors 181
  Steering Wheel 180
  Temperature 101
Agile Handling Assist 242
Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) 209
  Changing the Mode 209
  Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 211
  Dust and Pollen Filter 370
  Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 209, 210
  Sensors 213
  Using Automatic Climate Control 209
Air Conditioning System (Cooling System) 206
  Cooling 207
  Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 208
  Dust and Pollen Filter 370
Air Pressure 430
Airbags 47
  After a Collision 50
  Airbag Care 56
  Event Data Recorder 1
  Front Airbags (SRS) 49
  Indicator 55, 90
  Sensors 47
  Side Airbag 52
  Side Curtain Airbag 54
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 306
  Indicator 90
Armrest 195
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 156
Auto High-Beam 171
Auto Idle Stop 236
Automatic Intermittent Wipers 176
Average Fuel Economy 105, 127
Average Speed 107, 129

B

Battery 365
  Charging System Indicator 87, 408
  If the Battery Is Dead 398
  Maintenance (Checking the Battery) 365
Belts (Seat) 36
Beverage Holders 199
Booster Seats (For Children) 78
Brake System 304
  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 306
  Brake Assist System 307
  Fluid 345
  Foot Brake 305
  Indicator 86, 409
  Parking Brake 304
Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) 178
Bulb Replacement 348
  Back-Up Lights 351
  Brake Lights 349
  Ceiling Light 353
  Headlights 348
  High-Mount Brake Light 352
  Luggage Area Light 353
  Map Lights 353
  Position/Daytime Running Lights 348
  Rear Licence Plate Lights 352
  Rear Turn Signal Lights 349
  Side Turn Signal Lights 348
  Taillights 349, 351
Bulb Specifications 428

C

Carbon Monoxide Gas 80

Carrying Luggage 219, 220
Certification Label 431
Changing Bulbs 348
Charging System Indicator 87, 408
Child Restraint System 57
Booster Seats 78
Child Restraint System for Infants 61
Child Restraint System for Small Children ... 63
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 74
Larger Children 77
Rearward Facing Child Restraint System 61
Selecting a Child Restraint System 64
Using Tether 76
Child Safety 57
Childproof Door Locks 155
Cleaning the Exterior 375
Cleaning the Interior 372
Climate Control System 209
Changing the Mode 209
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 211
Dust and Pollen Filter 370
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 209, 210
Sensors 213
Using Automatic Climate Control 209
Clock 142
Clutch Fluid 345
CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking System) 246
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) 246
Compact Spare Tyre 430
Console Compartment 198
Continuously Variable Transmission 229
Creeping 229
Kickdown 229
Operating the Shift Lever 230, 231
Shift Lever Does Not Move 402
Shifting 230
Controls 141
Coolant (Engine) 341, 343
Adding the Coolant 342, 344
Checking the Coolant 341, 343
Low Temperature Indicator 90
Overheating 403
Cooling System 206
Cooling 207
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 208
Dust and Pollen Filter 370
Creeping (Continuously Variable Transmission) 229
Cup Holders 199
Customize Display 109, 132
Customized Features 110

D

Daytime Running Lights 174
Dead Battery 398
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 208, 211
Devices that Emit Radio Waves 432
Dimming
Headlights 167
Dipstick (Engine Oil) 338
Directional Signals (Turn Signals) 166
Door Mirrors 182
Doors 145
Auto Door Locking 156
Auto Door Unlocking 156
Door/Tailgate Open Message 35
Keys 145
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 154
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 147
Lockout Prevention System 153
Driver Information Interface 102, 123
Switching the Display 102
Driver's Pocket 201
Driver's Side Pocket 201
Driving 217
Braking 304
Continuously Variable Transmission 229
Shifting Gear 230
Starting the Engine 222
Dust and Pollen Filter 370

E

Eco Assist System 11
ECON Mode 235
Elapsed Time 107, 129
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System
  Indicator 91, 409
Emergency 424
Emergency Stop Signal 308
Engine
  Coolant 341, 343
  If the Battery Is Dead 398
  Number 431
  Oil 336
  Starting 222
Engine Coolant 341, 343
  Adding the Coolant 342, 344
  Checking the Coolant 341, 343
  Low Temperature Indicator 90
  Overheating 403
Engine Oil 336
  Adding 340
  Checking 338
  Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning 407
  Recommended Engine Oil 336
Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning 407
ENGINE START/STOP Button 163
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System 91
Exhaust Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) 80
Exterior Care (Cleaning) 375
Exterior Mirrors 182

F

Features 215
Filter
  Dust and Pollen 370
Flat Tyre 383
Floor Mats 373
Fluids
  Brake 345
  Clutch 345
  Engine Coolant 341, 343
  Windscreen Washer 347
Foot Brake 305
Front Airbags (SRS) 49
Front Seats 185
  Adjusting 185
Front Wide View Camera 302
Fuel 23, 313
  Average Fuel Economy 105, 127
  Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 315
  Gauge 100
  Instant Fuel Economy 105, 127
  Low Fuel Indicator 90
  Range 105, 127
  Recommendation 313
  Refueling 313
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 315
Fuel Fill Cap 23, 314
Fuel Fill Door 23, 314
Fuses 410
  Inspecting and Changing 423
  Locations .. 410, 412, 414, 416, 418, 420, 422

G

Gauges 100
Gear Shift Lever Positions
  Continuously Variable Transmission 230
Glass (care) 373, 376
Glove Box 198
G-Meter 130

H

Hazard Warning Button 4, 5
Head Restraints 192
Headlights 167
  Adjuster 170
  Aiming 348
  Dimming 167
  Operating 167
High-Beam Indicator 92
Honda Sensing 24, 243

I

Identification Numbers 431
  Engine and Transmission 431
  Vehicle Identification 431
Illumination Control 178
Immobilizer System 159
  Indicator 93

Indicators 84
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (Amber) 95
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (White/Green) 95
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 90
Auto High-Beam 92
Auto Idle Stop (Green) 94
Auto Idle Stop System (Amber) 94
Brake System 87
Charging System 87
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) (Amber) 96
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) (Grey) 96
ECON Mode 94
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System 91
Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning 407
High-Beam 92
Immobilizer System 93
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (Amber) 96
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (White/Green) 96
Lights On 92
Low Fuel (Amber) 90
Low Temperature (Blue) 90
M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/Shift 88
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 87
Parking Brake and Brake System 86
Road Departure Mitigation (Amber) 97
Road Departure Mitigation (Grey) 97
Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF 97
Safety Support (Amber) 98, 99
Safety Support (Green/Grey) 99
Seat Belt Reminder 89
Security System Alarm 93
Shift Position 88
Supplemental Restraint System 90
System Message 94
Transmission System 88
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning 92
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF 91, 241
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 91
Instant Fuel Economy 105, 127
Instrument Panel 83
Brightness Control 178
Interior Lights 196
Interior Rearview Mirror 181

J

Jump Starting 398

K

Key Number Tag 146
Keys 145
Lockout Prevention 153
Number Tag 146
Rear Door Won't Open 155
Remote Transmitter 147
Types and Functions 145
Kickdown (Continuously Variable Transmission) 229

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 284
Lead Car Departure Notification System 296
Light Switches 167
Lights 167, 348
Bulb Replacement 348
Daytime Running Lights 174
High-Beam Indicator Light 92
Interior 196
Lights On Indicator 92
Turn Signals 166
Load Limits 220
Locking/Unlocking 145
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 156
Childproof Door Locks 155
From Inside 154
From Outside 147
Keys 145
Using a Key 152
Lockout Prevention System 153
Low Battery Charge 408
Low Fuel Indicator 90
Lower Anchorages 70
Lubricant Specifications Chart 429

Luggage (Load Limit) ... 220
Luggage Area Cover ... 203
Luggage Floor Box ... 202
Luggage Hooks ... 201

M

Maintenance ... 317
Battery ... 365
Brake Fluid ... 345
Cleaning ... 372
Climate Control ... 370
Clutch Fluid ... 345
Coolant ... 341, 343
Cooling System ... 370
Oil ... 338
Oil Monitor System ... 321
Precautions ... 318
Radiator ... 342
Remote Transmitter ... 368
Replacing Light Bulbs ... 348
Safety ... 319
Transmission Fluid ... 345
Tyres ... 358
Under the Bonnet ... 333
Maintenance Schedule ... 326
Malfunction Indicator Lamp ... 87, 408
Map Lights ... 197
Maximum Permissible Weight ... 220
Meters, Gauges ... 100
Mirrors ... 181
Adjusting ... 181
Door ... 182
Exterior ... 182
Interior Rear View ... 181
Modifications (and Accessories) ... 378

N

Numbers (Identification) ... 431

O

Oil (Engine) ... 336
Adding ... 340
Checking ... 338
Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning ... 407
Recommended Engine Oil ... 336
Viscosity ... 336
Oil Monitor System ... 321
Opening/Closing
Bonnet ... 335
Power Windows ... 161
Tailgate ... 157
Outside Temperature ... 101
Adjusting ... 101
Overheating ... 403

P

Parking Brake ... 304
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator ... 86, 409
Parking Sensor System ... 311
Passing Indicators ... 167
Petrol ... 23, 313
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions ... 315
Gauge ... 100
Information ... 313
Instant Fuel Economy ... 105
Low Fuel Indicator ... 90
Refueling ... 313
Precautions While Driving ... 228
Rain ... 228
Pregnant Women ... 44
Puncture (Tyre) ... 383

R

Radiator ... 342
Range ... 105, 127
Rear Demister Button ... 179
Rear Seats ... 187
Refueling ... 313
Fuel Gauge ... 100
Low Fuel Indicator ... 90
Petrol ... 313, 428
Remote Engine Start ... 224
Remote Transmitter ... 147

Replacement
Battery ... 365
Bulbs ... 348
Fuses ... 410, 412, 414, 416
Wiper Blade Rubber ... 354, 356
Resetting a Trip Meter ... 105, 127
Road Departure Mitigation ... 259
On and Off ... 263

S

Safe Driving ... 31
Safety Check ... 35
Safety Labels ... 81
Safety Message ... 0
Safety Support ... 108, 131
Seat Belts ... 36
Checking ... 45
Fastening ... 41
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt ... 74
Pregnant Women ... 44
Reminder ... 38
Warning Indicator ... 38, 89
Seats ... 184
Adjusting ... 184
Front Seats ... 185
Rear Seat Reminder ... 190
Rear Seats ... 187
Security System ... 159
Immobilizer System Indicator ... 93
Security System Alarm Indicator ... 93
Selecting a Child Restraint System ... 64
Setting the Clock ... 142
Settings ... 110, 133
Shift Lever ... 230
Operation ... 230
Releasing ... 402
Shift Lever Position Indicator ... 231
Won't Move ... 402
Shifting (Transmission) ... 230
Side Airbags ... 52
Side Curtain Airbag ... 54
Spare Tyre ... 430
Spark Plugs ... 428
Specifications ... 428
Specified Fuel ... 313
Speedometer ... 100
SRS Airbags (Airbags) ... 49
Starting the Engine ... 222
Does Not Start ... 394
If the Battery Is Dead ... 398
Steering Wheel ... 180
Adjusting ... 180
Stopping ... 309
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) ... 49
Switches (Around the Steering Wheel) ... 4, 6, 163

T

Tachometer ... 100
Tailgate ... 157
Unable to Open ... 425
TCU Open Source Licence ... 434
Temperature
Low Temperature Indicator ... 90
Outside Temperature Display ... 101
Temperature Sensor ... 101, 213
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre ... 383
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK) ... 383
Time (Setting) ... 142
Tools ... 382
Towing a Trailer ... 221
Towing Your Vehicle
Emergency ... 424
Transmission ... 230
Continuously Variable Transmission ... 230
Fluid ... 345
Number ... 431
Shift Position Indicator ... 88, 231
Trip Meter ... 105, 127
TRK (Temporary Repair Kit) ... 383
Troubleshooting ... 381
Blown
Fuse ... 410, 412, 414, 416, 418, 420, 422
Brake Pedal Vibrates ... 27
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door ... 29
Emergency Towing ... 424
Engine Won't Start ... 394
Noise When Braking ... 29
Overheating ... 403
Puncture/Flat Tyre ... 383

Rear Door Won't Open 28
Shift Lever Won't Move 402
Warning Indicators..... 84
Turbo Engine Vehicle 316
Turn signals 166
Indicators (Instrument Panel) 92
Tyres..... 358
Air Pressure..... 430
Checking and Maintaining 358
Inspection 359
Puncture (Flat Tyre) 383
Rotation..... 362
Spare Tyre..... 430
Tyre Chains..... 363
Wear Indicators..... 360
Winter 363

U

Unlocking the Doors..... 147
Unlocking the Driver's Doors from the Inside..... 154
USB Ports 205

V

Vanity Mirrors 9
Vehicle Identification Numbers 431
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) 240
Off Button 241
OFF Indicator 91
System Indicator 91
Ventilation 206, 209
Viscosity (Oil) 336, 429
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist)..... 240

W

Warning Indicator On/Blinking 407
Warning Labels..... 81
Warnings..... 109
Watts 428
Wear Indicators (Tyre)..... 360
Window Washers
Adding/Refilling Fluid..... 347
Switch 175
Windows (Opening and Closing)..... 161
Windscreen
Cleaning..... 373, 376
Defrosting/Defogging 208, 211
Washer Fluid 347
Wiper Blades 354
Wipers and Washers..... 175
Winter Tyres..... 363
Tyre Chains 363
Wipers and Washers..... 175
Automatic Intermittent Wipers..... 176
Checking and Replacing Front Blades 354
Checking and Replacing Rear Blades..... 356
Rear 177
Worn Tyres..... 358